

# Adobe Creative Suite Printing Guide



# Adobe® Creative Suite® Printing Guide

<b>Introduction</b> .....	<b>1</b>
What This Guide Is Intended to Do .....	1
How This Guide Is Structured.....	1
<b>Chapter 1: Common Resources</b> .....	<b>3</b>
The Adobe PDF Print Engine.....	3
Adobe Graphics Model .....	3
PDF Creation.....	3
PDF Settings: An overview.....	4
Settings Available From Within Individual Applications .....	6
Helping Customers Prepare Files for Submission .....	9
Transparency.....	9
Color Management in Creative Suite 6.....	11
OpenType Font Format.....	13
<b>Chapter 2: Adobe InDesign CS6</b> .....	<b>14</b>
InDesign CS6: New Features .....	14
Features Introduced in CS5/5.5.....	17
Preparing InDesign Documents for Output.....	21
Links Panel .....	25
Text Features.....	32
Rotated Spread Viewing .....	34
Using the InDesign Forensic Tools .....	35
Preflight Profile Options .....	36
Finding Problems: Additional Forensic Tools.....	38
Color Management Issues .....	42
Working With a Book File .....	43
Creating PDF Files From InDesign .....	45
Printing from InDesign.....	46
Helping Customers Prepare InDesign Files .....	52

<b>Chapter 3: Adobe Photoshop CS6 and Photoshop CS6 Extended</b> .....	<b>57</b>
Photoshop CS6: New Features .....	57
General Guidelines .....	58
Color mode .....	61
Image Formats .....	64
Printing from Photoshop.....	71
<b>Chapter 4: Adobe Illustrator CS6</b> .....	<b>74</b>
Illustrator CS6: New Features .....	74
Helpful Existing Features.....	75
Working with Multiple Artboards.....	78
Working with Text from Previous Versions of Illustrator .....	80
Saving For Previous Versions.....	81
Document Color Modes .....	82
Live Effects .....	83
Handling complex files .....	87
Examining Customer Files .....	89
Forensic Tools.....	90
Printing From Illustrator .....	92
Creating PDF Files .....	94
Opening Illustrator PDF Files in Illustrator.....	96
<b>Chapter 5: Adobe Acrobat X Pro</b> .....	<b>97</b>
Changes in Acrobat X Pro .....	97
New and Improved Features .....	97
Examining PDFs .....	99
Overprint Preview in Acrobat X Pro.....	101
Comparing Documents .....	101
Acrobat X Pro Print Production Tools.....	102

Acrobat Distiller .....	103
Output Preview .....	103
Preflight .....	107
Trap Presets.....	113
Convert Colors.....	113
Using the Ink Manager.....	115
Set Page Boxes .....	116
Adding Printer Marks.....	118
Fixing Hairlines.....	118
Previewing and Flattening Transparency.....	119
Using the Job Definition Format (JDF).....	124
Editing PDF Files .....	126
Comment and Review features in Acrobat X Pro .....	129
Printing PDF Files.....	132
Links To Known Issues And Resources.....	137
<b>Addendum: Adobe Acrobat XI Pro</b> .....	<b>138</b>
Toolbar Changes .....	138
Improved Text and Image Editing .....	138
Customize Tools and Tool Panes .....	141
Improved Export to Other Formats.....	143
Print Production Tools.....	144
Additions to Commenting Tools.....	146
Changes to Adobe Reader .....	146
Flash Player Required to View SWF and Portfolios .....	147
Links To Known Issues And Resources.....	147

# Introduction

Welcome to the Adobe® Creative Suite® 6 Printing Guide. Adobe is dedicated to providing software that allows designers to express their visual ideas, while providing tools and resources to printers to ensure that those ideas print as intended. While designers explore the creative features of Adobe Photoshop® CS6, Adobe InDesign® CS6, and Adobe Illustrator® CS6, as well as the capabilities of Acrobat® X and XI Pro, printers need to take a rather different approach. You might call it “reverse engineering”— inspecting, analyzing, and, if necessary, modifying customer files to facilitate printing. While this document is focused on the needs and requirements of printers, it is also useful for production artists who are preparing files for print.

Some modifications (for example, replacing solid black areas with a rich black build, or converting RGB text to black-only) are dictated by the physical requirements of printing. Some tweaks may be necessary to accommodate a particular raster image processor (RIP) or imaging device. Not all workflows are the same, and solutions vary accordingly. Regardless of your particular workflow, the more you know about the tools used by designers to create files, the better equipped you are to anticipate, prevent, find, and fix problems. In addition, you’ll be better able to advise your customers as they prepare files for submission.

## WHAT THIS GUIDE IS INTENDED TO DO

This guide serves as both a detailed technical reference for handling Creative Suite 6 files from your customers, and as a training tool for your staff.

For example, this guide will introduce you to forensic tools, such as the Overprint Preview option in Illustrator, InDesign, and Acrobat X Pro, as well as the Output Preview function in Acrobat, all of which are invaluable in highlighting potential problems. The earlier you can

pinpoint problems in a job, the less expensive and complicated they are to rectify.

As RIPs have matured, there are fewer issues with jobs containing transparency. The advent of pure PDF workflows based on the Adobe PDF Print Engine will result in more reliable reproduction of PDF content—that is, greater consistency and fidelity to the designer’s intent. For example, transparency effects in InDesign CS6, such as gradient feather, glow, and inner shadow effects, image without the need for flattening when output through a PDF Print Engine-based RIP. You’ll find guidance in this document for identifying such effects and for preparing jobs to correctly render them during output. Additionally, you’ll find links to other available reference materials that cover such topics in depth.

## HOW THIS GUIDE IS STRUCTURED

Some technologies and concepts—such as PDF creation, transparency, and the Adobe Graphics Model—are common across the Adobe products used for print design and production in Creative Suite 6. You’ll find information about such topics in the “Common Resources” chapter.

This document is organized so that you can quickly find information about specific software. As a job enters production in a printing plant, its path varies according to the conventions of the particular plant, as well as the requirements of the job. But because many jobs involve the aggregation of artwork and text in an InDesign CS6 layout, it makes sense to treat InDesign as a “hub,” and Photoshop, Illustrator, and Acrobat as related spokes. As the applications themselves are deeply integrated, you’ll find cross references that mirror the interdependent ecosystem of the Creative Suite. For example, it’s not enough to know how to place an image in InDesign: you also need to know how certain

aspects of a Photoshop image (such as opacity, blending modes, or vector content) will print from InDesign.

Because an Adobe PDF is often the final product of the job, Acrobat wraps up this guide. You'll find advice for generating PDFs in the "Common Resources" chapter, with additional application-specific information in sections on individual applications. The Acrobat section will familiarize you with the preview, preflight, and editing tools available in Acrobat X Pro.

Additional resources are included throughout and at the end of this guide, to help you locate specific information online.

# Chapter 1: Common Resources

The integration between components in the Creative Suite 6 family allows for such productivity enhancing features as shared color management settings, common PDF presets files, shared color swatches, and the ability to use native files—such as Photoshop .psd, Illustrator .ai, Acrobat .pdf, and even InDesign .indd formats—as artwork. Since there is so much “common ground,” this section addresses features and issues that are the same across many of the Creative Suite 6 components.

## THE ADOBE PDF PRINT ENGINE

The Adobe PDF Print Engine is not a shrink-wrapped product. It is a printing platform based on PDF and other Adobe core technologies. OEM RIPs and workflow systems incorporating the PDF Print Engine can process PDF files natively (without converting data to PostScript® or a proprietary intermediate format), thus maintaining live transparency. Being able to use native, unconverted (and unflattened) PDF files throughout a workflow provides a complete, end-to-end PDF environment that uses common technology to generate, preview, and print PDF files.

The Adobe PDF Print Engine combines the strengths of Adobe PDF for content definition and the Job Description Format (JDF) standard for job ticketing and process control in powering RIP and workflow systems. Available in printing systems from Adobe print solution partners, the Adobe PDF Print Engine enhances output consistency throughout the workflow, improving overall print productivity and profitability. Adobe PDF Print Engine 2 extends these benefits to production workflows for Variable Data Printing (VDP) used in personalized publishing (e.g. direct marketing), and output to a digital color press, via the PDF/VT ISO standard.

For more information on the Adobe PDF Print Engine and the partners who market RIPs and workflow systems incorporating it, see <http://www.adobe.com/products/pdfprintengine>.

## ADOBE GRAPHICS MODEL

The Adobe Graphics Model ensures consistent rendering and display of color and transparency effects in Illustrator, Photoshop, InDesign and Acrobat. It is essentially a software RIP that processes graphics instructions and displays the results on screen. The Adobe Graphics Model allows InDesign to consistently display placed raster and vector art at full resolution, as if you were viewing the original art in Photoshop or Illustrator. It also enables you to view realistic rendering of overprinting and special effects such as opacity settings and blending modes.

## PDF CREATION

The Adobe PDF Library is used consistently by Creative Suite 6 components which generate PDFs natively. Consequently, Illustrator, InDesign, and Photoshop can directly generate PDF files without the need for Acrobat Distiller®. Of course, Distiller is still available to convert PostScript files into PDFs if necessary, but directly exporting PDF files is the recommended method of creating PDF files. It's faster and easier to generate PDF files through direct export and, in addition, if you wish to maintain live transparency (if your RIP supports it, as all Adobe PDF Print Engine-based RIPs do), directly exporting PDFs is the only way to do so.

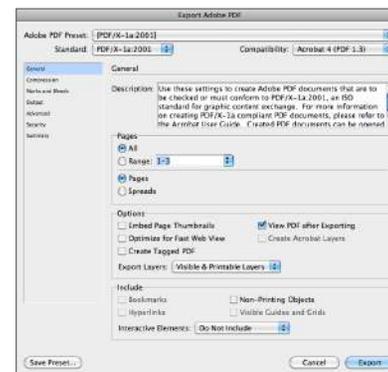
While in the past, many workflows required you to create PostScript and use Distiller to generate PDFs rather than exporting PDFs, that's unnecessary in current workflows, unless you need to create PDFs from non-Adobe applications. Generating PostScript from Adobe applications and distilling is not recommended by Adobe Systems. Even if your imposition software or RIP dictates that you submit Acrobat 4.0-compatible files, there should be no issues in using exported PDFs created using the PDF/X-1a preset, which meets the PDF 1.3 (Acrobat 4.0) specification. Contact your RIP and imposition vendors to obtain updated versions that support more modern PDF formats. For more information on PDF specifications, see the "Acrobat X Pro" section in this document.

If your workflow includes a RIP that utilizes the Adobe PDF Print Engine, take advantage of the support for unflattened transparency by exporting to the latest level of PDF supported by your RIP, or to standards-based PDF such as PDF/X-4, rather than generating PostScript and distilling to create a PDF (which would flatten transparency).

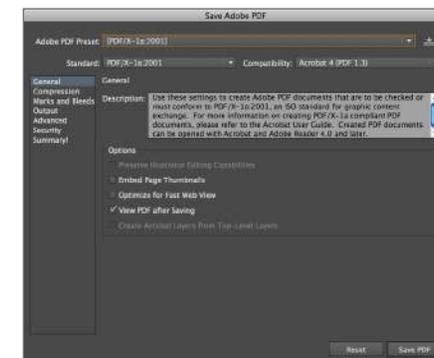
## PDF SETTINGS: AN OVERVIEW

Whether you are generating PDFs from Illustrator, Photoshop, InDesign, or through Distiller, the categories of PDF settings are the same. These settings are found in the Export Adobe PDF dialog (InDesign), the Save As dialog (Illustrator and Photoshop), and under Edit PDF Settings (Distiller).

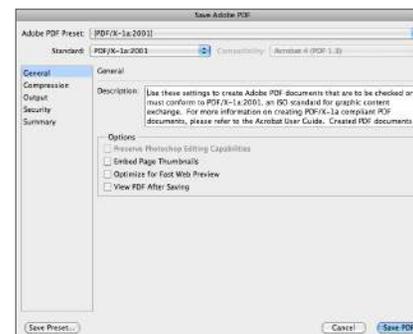
- **Adobe PDF Preset** indicates whether a default preset or a user-created preset is being used. If you've started with an existing preset and modified some of its settings, the preset name is followed by *modified*.



PDF Export Options: InDesign



PDF Save As Options: Illustrator



PDF Save As Options: Photoshop

- **Standard** specifies whether the setting achieves a defined PDF/X format for the file (such as PDF/X-1a, PDF/X-3, or PDF/X-4), or meets the definitions for one of the PDF/A (archival) standards.
- **Compatibility** indicates the minimum version of Acrobat required to read the file. The label in parentheses shows the PDF file specification that applies; for example, "Acrobat 5 (PDF 1.4)" indicates that the resulting PDF will be compatible with Acrobat 5.0 and later, and that the file meets the PDF 1.4 specification. Proper compatibility also affects other applications that must process the PDF, such as imposition software. While an Acrobat 9/10-compatible file may seem more "modern," your imposition software may not allow you to use it. Consult the documentation for such software, as well as the requirements for your RIP, to determine the appropriate compatibility setting.

- **General** includes basic file options, such as page range. The choices in the “Options” and “Include” sections of the General pane (such as Bookmarks, Hyperlinks, and Tagged PDF) affect only web-appropriate PDFs and do not pertain to print-ready PDFs. However, if you are producing a document that may be used in various media or that could be archived, it is recommended that you configure these options appropriately as well.
- **Compression** allows you to specify settings for compression and downsampling of images. Additional options let you compress text and line art, and crop images to frame limits.
- **Marks and Bleeds** options let you include crop and bleed marks, as well as page information, bleed, and slug area.
- **Output** controls how colors are converted (or preserved), based on your choices and the color management settings in effect.
- **Advanced** controls font embedding and subsetting, OPI comments, transparency flattening (if necessitated by the PDF compatibility setting), and the inclusion of JDF information.
- **Embedding** includes the entire character set of a font in the resulting PDF; subsetting is a form of embedding that includes only characters used in the document, and results in a smaller file size. Although Illustrator, InDesign, Photoshop and Distiller correctly embed fonts in PDF files, some non-Adobe applications may not. Additionally, some fonts cannot be embedded in PDFs because of vendor licensing restrictions. It is advised that you never create a PDF without embedding or subsetting fonts.
- **Security** allows you to add password-based security to the PDF file. (Security options are not available during creation or editing of a PDF preset. Security options are available only at the time of PDF creation or later within Acrobat). Note that imposition software may reject a PDF with security settings, even if the file does not require a password. It’s best to avoid any security restrictions on PDFs intended for print. If a customer supplies a PDF with security settings applied, request that

they submit a replacement PDF without security settings. Note that security is not supported in PDF/X compliant files for this reason.

- **Summary** displays an overview of the PDF settings. To expand the description for each category, click the arrow to the left of the topic. If any conflicts occur (such as a source color profile that doesn’t match the color settings file in effect), a warning will appear in the Warnings area.

## Default PDF settings

Several of the default PDF presets (also referred to as joboptions files) are specifically intended for commercial printing, with some important differences noted. Typically, it’s most appropriate to start with one of the default settings, modify it to suit your needs, and save that setting as a custom job option. Since PDF settings are stored in a common repository and shared by InDesign, Illustrator, Photoshop, and Distiller, you can create custom presets in one of the applications, and the settings will automatically be available to the other applications. (However, some installed presets are available only within Distiller or Illustrator). Adobe applications install a default set of PDF creation presets, which cannot be edited; however, you can start with a default preset, duplicate it, and edit the duplicate preset for your workflow. While the interfaces for creating PDF options differ slightly between the applications, the concepts are the same. An introduction to the features of the common default presets follows.

## Smallest File Size

Appropriate for online distribution or e-mail attachments (but not for use in commercial printing, where reliable viewing, online proofing, and reproduction of original content is crucial), the Smallest File Size option aggressively compresses and resamples image content, and converts all RGB, CMYK, and grayscale content to the sRGB color space (spot colors are retained, however). This may result in noticeable color shifts from the original artwork. Note that the compatibility setting for Smallest File Size is now Acrobat 6.0, to reflect latest best practices and requirements. Settings include:

- **Compatibility:** Acrobat 6.0 (PDF 1.5), which maintains live transparency and layers (provided the PDF is created via direct export, rather than generating PostScript and distilling).
- **Color Images:** Bicubic downsampling to 100 ppi; Compression = Automatic (JPEG); Image Quality = Low.
- **Grayscale Images:** Bicubic downsampling to 150 ppi; Compression = Automatic (JPEG); Image Quality = Low.
- **Output:** Destination = sRGB IEC61966-2.1.

## High Quality Print

Intended for imaging on in-house proofers and desktop printers. Any RGB, Lab or spot-color content will remain in its original color space, not converted to CMYK. While this might be appropriate for desktop printers or other digital imaging devices, color appearance may be compromised if the PDF is processed in a workflow that does not honor color profiles. For reliable color rendition, Adobe recommends using a workflow that correctly honors color profiles. High Quality Print settings include:

- **Compatibility:** Acrobat 5.0 (PDF 1.4), which maintains live transparency (provided the PDF is created via direct export, rather than generating PostScript and distilling).
- **Color Images:** Bicubic downsampling to 300 ppi; Compression = Automatic (JPEG); Image Quality = Maximum.
- **Grayscale Images:** Bicubic downsampling to 300 ppi; Compression = Automatic (JPEG); Image Quality = Maximum.
- **Output:** No color conversion; include tagged source profiles.

## Press Quality

The settings of the Press Quality preset create a PDF that converts color content to CMYK using the specified destination profile, which locks the output to a particular device. Press Quality settings include:

- **Compatibility:** Acrobat 5.0 (PDF 1.4), which maintains live transparency (provided the PDF is created via direct export, rather than generating PostScript and distilling).
- **Color Images:** Bicubic downsampling to 300 ppi; Compression = Automatic (JPEG); Image Quality = Maximum.
- **Grayscale Images:** Bicubic downsampling to 300 ppi; Compression = Automatic (JPEG); Image Quality = Maximum.
- **Output:** Convert content with profiles to destination; preserve color numbers for untagged content; maintain spot colors.

## SETTINGS AVAILABLE FROM WITHIN INDIVIDUAL APPLICATIONS

### Standard [available in Distiller only]

Intended for viewing and printing business documents (but not for commercial print). Most spot color content is usually maintained, but areas interacting with transparency may be converted to RGB. Standard settings include:

- **Compatibility:** Acrobat 6.0 (PDF 1.5).
- **Color Images:** Bicubic downsampling to 150 ppi; Compression = Automatic (JPEG); Image Quality = Medium.
- **Grayscale Images:** Bicubic downsampling to 150 ppi; Compression = Automatic (JPEG); Image Quality = Medium.
- **Output:** Destination = sRGB IEC61966-2.1.

### Oversized Pages [available in Distiller only]

Intended for use in architectural and engineering environments, this option allows pages in excess of 200 x 200 inches (such as CAD files) to be saved as PDFs. Most spot color content is maintained, but areas interacting with transparency may be converted to RGB. Settings include:

- **Compatibility:** Acrobat 7.0 (PDF 1.6).

- **Color Images:** Bicubic downsampling to 150 ppi; Compression = Automatic (JPEG); Image Quality = Medium.
- **Grayscale Images:** Bicubic downsampling to 150 ppi; Compression = Automatic (JPEG); Image Quality = Medium.
- **Output:** Destination = sRGB IEC61966-2.1.

### **PDF/A-1b:2005 (CMYK) and PDF/A-1b:2005 (RGB) [available in Distiller only]**

PDF/A is an ISO standard for long-term storage of electronic documents (the A stands for “archival”). Audio and video content are not allowed, and the PDF may not invoke external information sources (such as attachments, fonts, or hyperlinks). No encryption is permitted, and JavaScript is not allowed. Settings include:

- **Compatibility:** Acrobat 5.0 (PDF 1.4).
- **Color Images:** Bicubic downsampling to 300 ppi; Compression = Automatic (JPEG); Image Quality = Maximum.
- **Grayscale Images:** Bicubic downsampling to 300 ppi; Compression = Automatic (JPEG); Image Quality = Maximum.
- **Output:** Color mode depends on the choice of the PDF/A-1b:2005 (CMYK) or PDF/A-1b:2005 (RGB) standard.

### **Illustrator Default [available in Illustrator only]**

A PDF created with Illustrator’s Default setting is essentially an Illustrator file in a PDF wrapper: to Illustrator, it’s just a normal Illustrator file, with all layers, objects, and effects intact. To other applications, it’s a PDF with Acrobat 6.0 compatibility. Unlike other PDF files, these files can be opened safely in Illustrator and edited, provided that the necessary fonts are active, if the option to “Preserve Illustrator Editing Capabilities” is selected. Settings include:

- **Compatibility:** Acrobat 6.0 (PDF 1.5).

- **Color and Grayscale Images:** No downsampling; Compression = ZIP 8-bit.
- **Output:** No color conversion.

### **PDF/X: Industry standards**

Tailored specifically for the printing industry, PDF/X specifications are intended to provide a framework for creating print-ready PDFs. PDF/X is a subset of the full PDF specification, refined to prevent the inclusion of non print-appropriate content such as movies, and to ensure that important needs—such as correct font embedding—are honored. As RIPs and other workflow components become more sophisticated, the PDF/X standards evolve to meet the needs and capabilities of the changing environment, hence the multiple specifications. How do you determine which of the PDF/X standards is appropriate for your workflow? The compatibility level (Acrobat 4 or 5) may be dictated by the capability of your RIP or other components (such as imposition software); the output settings will be determined by whether or not you’re using a color-managed workflow.

Given the proven reliability of PDF/X formats in print workflows, it is highly recommended that you start with the most appropriate PDF/X specification for your workflow, and make whatever modifications you need (such as invoking bleed or adding marks).

### **PDF/X-1a:2001/2003**

PDF/X-1a files can contain CMYK, grayscale, and spot-color content, but no RGB content. The ArtBox or TrimBox must be internally defined in the file; fonts must be embedded and/or subset. Acrobat 4.0 compatibility dictates that transparency is flattened (ideally, at the high-quality resolution). Settings include:

- **Compatibility:** Acrobat 4.0 (PDF 1.3). Transparency will be flattened.
- **Color Images:** Bicubic downsampling to 300 ppi; Compression = Automatic (JPEG); Image Quality = Maximum.

- **Grayscale Images:** Bicubic downsampling to 300 ppi; Compression = Automatic (JPEG); Image Quality = Maximum.
- **Output:** Convert to destination color space; no embedded profiles.

### PDF/X-3:2002/2003

The specification for PDF/X-3 builds on PDF/X-1a, adding support for embedded color profiles and thus allowing RGB and Lab content in addition to the color spaces supported by PDF/X-1a. Use this format in a color-managed workflow. Settings include:

- **Compatibility:** Acrobat 4.0 (PDF 1.3). Transparency will be flattened.
- **Color Images:** Bicubic downsampling to 300 ppi; Compression = Automatic (JPEG); Image Quality = Maximum.
- **Grayscale Images:** Bicubic downsampling to 300 ppi; Compression = Automatic (JPEG); Image Quality = Maximum.
- **Output:** No color conversion; embedded profiles.

### PDF/X-4:2008/2010 [Not available in Distiller]

PDF/X-4 extends the PDF/X-3 specification, adding support for live, unflattened transparency, as well as layers. The inclusion of layers and live transparency may make PDF/X-4 files inappropriate in workflows using very old imaging devices and PDF workflow software. Consult the documentation for your RIP and any other steps in your workflow, such as imposition, to determine if PDF/X-4 files can be processed correctly. Part of the PDF/X-4 standard is the requirement that a "conforming reader" application shall be used to properly process it, which may mean that you need to obtain a patch or upgrade for your RIP or other processes (such as trapping and imposition) that will handle PDFs. RIPs using the Adobe PDF Print Engine can correctly process PDF/X-4 files. Additionally, Acrobat/Reader 9 and Acrobat/Reader X correctly output PDF/X-4 files to fully-compliant PostScript Language Level 2 and 3 devices. Settings include:

- **Compatibility:** Acrobat 7.0 (PDF 1.6). Live transparency is maintained.

- **Color Images:** Bicubic downsampling to 300 ppi; Compression = Automatic (JPEG); Image Quality = Maximum.

- **Grayscale Images:** Bicubic downsampling to 300 ppi; Compression = Automatic (JPEG); Image Quality = Maximum.

- **Output:** No color conversion; embedded profiles.

### Managing Custom PDF presets

Supplied PDF presets are stored in one common location for access by Illustrator, InDesign, Photoshop and Distiller (with the exceptions of application-specific presets noted previously). Because the presets are stored in a common repository, if you attempt to delete a preset, you'll receive an alert that deletion will affect more than the application you're using at the moment.

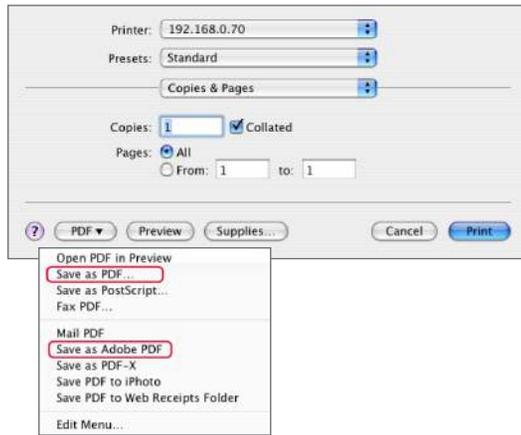
User-created custom presets are also available to Illustrator, InDesign, Photoshop and Distiller, but are stored in a separate location from the factory presets. On the Mac, you'll find custom settings in [user]/Library/Application Support/Adobe/Adobe PDF/Settings. On a PC, they're stored in C:\Documents and Settings\[user]\Application Data\Adobe\Shared Documents\Adobe PDF\Settings. As you establish methods for the creation of PDFs for your particular workflow, standardize all of your prepress workstations, and share those methods and the correct presets with your customers to ensure submission of appropriate PDF files as final job files. You can provide the correct PDF presets to your customers as \*.joboptions files; they simply double-click the file and it's automatically installed in the correct location.

The methods for exporting and importing saved PDF presets varies slightly by Creative Suite 6 component; see this document's section on the individual component (or consult the Help menu for the application) for specifics.

### "Save as PDF" feature [Mac OS® only]

*NOTE: This feature should ONLY be used with non-Adobe applications.*

Clicking the Printer button in print dialog boxes on the Apple® Macintosh® takes you to the operating system's printer dialog. The PDF button at the bottom of the dialog box opens a pull-down menu with PDF options. The Save as PDF function is an Apple operating system process, and does not invoke Acrobat or Distiller. Instead, use the **Save as Adobe PDF** option



### Save As PDF

The “Save as PDF” option available in Macintosh print dialog boxes does not use Distiller or any other Adobe process to create PDF files. Use “Save as Adobe PDF” instead (available only on OS 10.6 and later).

If you are limited to an older workflow which requires that you submit PostScript or EPS files for RIP processing, consult the vendor documentation for your system before creating PostScript or EPS files.

## HELPING CUSTOMERS PREPARE FILES FOR SUBMISSION

Educating your customers makes your life—and theirs—easier on many levels, and as a result also builds customer loyalty. It’s very helpful if you provide reference materials outlining correct procedures for job submission. Do you prefer native application files (for example, an InDesign file plus support art and fonts)? Advise your customers on proper usage of InDesign’s Live Preflight and Package features, and point out the forensic tools built into InDesign and Illustrator that can help them find errors before sending their files to you. For example,

Illustrator CS6 includes a Separation Preview function, and you can create and share custom InDesign Preflight profiles with your customers. See the “InDesign CS6” and “Illustrator CS6” sections of this document for more information.

If you prefer that customers submit print-ready PDF files, the preceding advice is still beneficial, because using the tools correctly and understanding your needs helps them build better files, which become better PDFs. No doubt you know all too well that a poorly constructed document becomes an unusable PDF. With that in mind, consider showing customers how to use the forensic tools in Acrobat X Pro to highlight potential problems before they send a PDF that won’t print as expected. Encourage your customers to perform preflight inspections on PDF files they are preparing for print, to ensure a smoother flow in your processes and reduce the amount of time you spend fixing PDF files to meet your production needs.

Consider providing custom presets to your customers, to enable them to create PDFs to your specifications. It is also helpful to provide customized preflight profiles for Acrobat and the new InDesign Live Preflight to customers to ensure that they perform all the proper preflight checks according to your settings. For more information on the Print Production tools in Acrobat X Pro, see that section of this document.

## TRANSPARENCY

As Adobe applications have developed more sophisticated methods of flattening transparency to meet the limitations of PostScript-based workflows, and as RIP manufacturers have enhanced the capabilities of their devices, imaging transparency is no longer the challenge it was in earlier versions of the software. Transparency is completely and natively supported by the PDF imaging model. Because transparency rendering is dependent upon the color profile and resolution of the final output device, it is desirable to maintain transparency effects in a live, unflattened state right through to final output. PDF jobs which are

rendered by a PostScript RIP must be flattened to opaque objects prior to rendering. If the job is properly constructed, this can happen very late in the workflow, and the desired results can be achieved even via printing such PDF files with live transparency to PostScript RIPs directly from Adobe Acrobat Pro. Print workflows which utilize the Adobe PDF Print Engine can maintain live transparency effects all the way through to final rendering. This provides a high degree of confidence that the printed jobs will reproduce with a high degree of fidelity to the designer's intent.

InDesign, Illustrator, and Photoshop create and support opacity and blending mode attributes for content, and PDF files compatible with Acrobat 5.0 and later can contain live, unflattened transparency. PDF files compatible with Acrobat 4.0 and earlier cannot have live transparency; such content is flattened into opaque objects in the PDF.



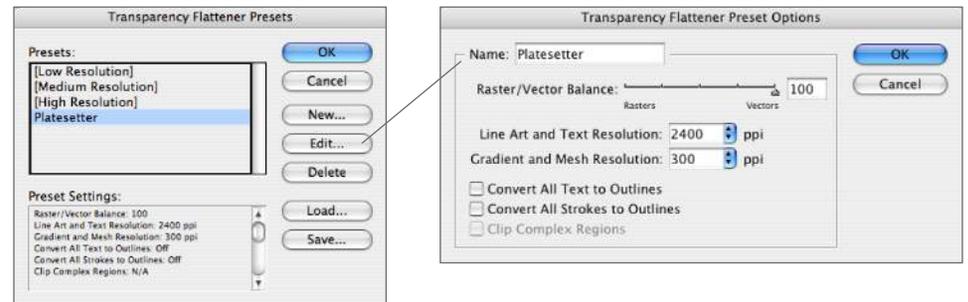
### Flattened and Unflattened Transparency

*Objects in an unflattened PDF (center; pulled apart to show intact live transparency) remain intact, and transparency is still live. But a PDF/X-1a file requires flattened transparency, which results in many opaque, separate "atomic regions" (right; showing atomic regions).*

While the requirements of your own workflow dictate some parts of your approach to imaging transparency, here are some general, beneficial guidelines for you and your customers:

- If possible, place text and vector content higher in stacking order than objects using transparency. For example, move a text frame in InDesign so that it is positioned above a placed Photoshop file that is silhouetted with soft-edged transparency. This can be accomplished by changing the stacking order of objects, or by moving the text frame to a higher layer. Of course, if this would alter the design, it may not be an option.

- Keep transparency live as long as possible. Rather than flattening a layered Photoshop file to a single layer, keep the layers intact and save the file as a native Photoshop file (.psd). Use Illustrator native (.ai) files rather than saving artwork in the EPS format, which flattens transparency. When creating PDFs from documents containing live transparency, use a PDF format (compatible with Acrobat 5.0 or later, such as PDF/X-4 that supports live transparency, if your workflow supports such PDF files).
- If your workflow system requires that transparency be flattened, you may want to create a customized transparency flattener preset and share it with your customers. The High Resolution flattener preset is satisfactory for most circumstances, but you may wish to create a custom flattener preset that uses a Line Art and Text Resolution setting in keeping with the resolution of your RIP. For example, if your platesetter uses a 2400 dpi resolution, create a custom preset using that resolution. You also have the option to convert all text and strokes to outlines in the interest of consistency across flattened and unflattened areas, but this option may result in larger file sizes in the PDF or EPS files produced, and renders text uneditable.

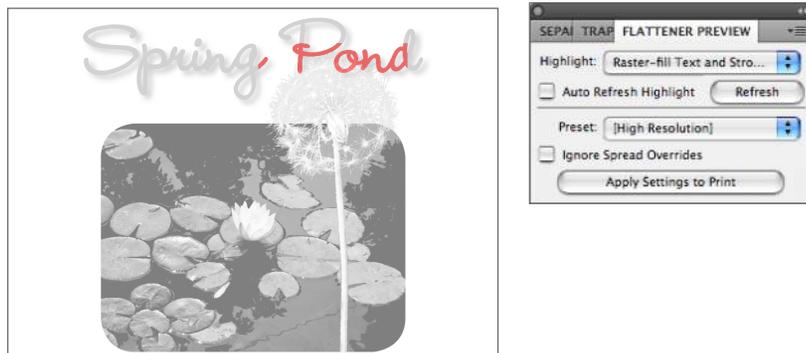


### Transparency Flattener Presets

*While the High Resolution flattener preset (left) is usually sufficient, you may wish to create a custom preset that incorporates a Line Art and Text Resolution that matches the resolution of your RIP (right). You also have options to convert text or strokes to outlines.*

- Use the Flattener Preview feature, available in Illustrator, InDesign, and Acrobat, to highlight areas in artwork that will be affected by flattening. In InDesign and Illustrator, use the preview as a guide to help you

decide how you should stack page objects to avoid flattening text and vector segments.



#### Flattener Preview

*Red highlight indicates vector areas that will be affected by transparency.*

## COLOR MANAGEMENT IN CREATIVE SUITE 6

The goals of color management are to reduce the amount of proofing needed to accurately assess color, and to ensure predictable output and print. When used properly, color management speeds the process and reduces the costs associated with achieving the color your customer expects.

Keep in mind that, even if you choose to turn off color management in Adobe applications (note that you cannot turn off color management in Acrobat X Pro), color management is still being performed by your operating system to govern monitor display and printing. It's best to leave color management on in Adobe applications, and to ensure that the same settings are used across all the applications for consistency. Use Adobe Bridge to easily synchronize color settings for Illustrator, Photoshop, InDesign and Acrobat simultaneously.

Illustrator, Photoshop, InDesign and Acrobat use the same underlying code to render color—whether displaying an image on a monitor, printing to a desktop printer, or sending data to a RIP. If color management is carefully implemented and maintained, you should be able to better communicate color expectations with your customers.

In addition to providing an environment for consistent color viewing and rendering, color-managed workflows allow—and encourage—the use of RGB images. With a larger color gamut than CMYK, RGB offers the potential for more flexibility in a print workflow, especially if the content might be repurposed for the web, video, or mobile phones. Some color corrections are much more easily performed in the RGB color mode, and many digital devices (such as inkjet printers and toner-based digital presses) are capable of rendering a wider gamut than is possible with offset inks. Consequently, in such an environment, it is beneficial to maintain maximum color possibilities by not converting to CMYK prematurely. Using RGB also makes it easier for you to move the project from one press to another while keeping the color looking consistent among your own equipment, deferring the conversion to CMYK until the latest point possible.

Managing color needs for a customer is a comprehensive job. Start by encouraging customers to at least calibrate their monitors using Adobe Gamma (Windows) or the Color System Preference under Displays (Mac OS). This provides them with a very basic system profile to be used in color management. For more reliable profiling, encourage them to obtain a monitor profiling device and use it at recommended intervals to maintain reliable on screen display. Don't share customized monitor profiles; each monitor needs a profile specifically generated for that particular monitor.

In many cases, choosing North America Prepress 2 as your color setting will be a sufficient start, but you can customize settings as you develop more specific RGB-to-CMYK conversions. For example, North America Prepress 2 uses a CMYK conversion that is based on Specification for Web Offset Publications (SWOP), and although it does work for sheetfed printing, it's not always the best choice. A more appropriate conversion for a sheetfed operation might be to choose the U.S. Sheetfed CMYK working space by selecting U.S. Sheetfed Coated (or Uncoated) v2 from the CMYK menu in the Color Settings dialog box. If you want to take more control, you can create a custom CMYK

conversion. From the same CMYK working space menu, choose Custom CMYK. In the Custom CMYK color settings dialog box, enter the values that will result in a CMYK conversion that best meets your needs. You may find it easiest to establish your settings in the Photoshop Color Settings dialog box (Edit > Color Settings). Keep in mind that, for optimum results, you should fingerprint your presses and proofing systems, and use custom profiles.

Once you have established a color setting in Photoshop, save and name it by clicking the Save button in the Color Settings dialog box. The settings will be placed in the correct folder so that the entire Creative Suite can access them. However, you can save them to another location as a way to distribute them to others. The file you create, with the extension .csf, contains the settings you share with other users in your shop or with customers.

To import color settings, click the Load button in the Edit > Color Settings dialog box in Illustrator, InDesign, or Photoshop. Navigate to the .csf file you want to load and select it. Once the color setting is imported into one of the applications, you will need to synchronize settings so that the other components can access them. The easiest way to do that is to use Adobe Bridge CS6. Here's how:

1. Launch Bridge.
2. Choose Edit > Creative Suite Color Settings.
3. From the list, choose your color settings by name. If you have not already loaded a supplied color setting, you can browse for it by clicking the Show Saved Color Settings Files and then navigating to the desired settings file.
4. Click Apply.



### Using Bridge to Synchronize Color Settings

*Adobe Bridge informs you when color settings are not synchronized across components that use color management. To synchronize settings in all applications, select the proper color setting from the list of Suite Color Settings, or browse to import a supplied setting by clicking the Show Saved Color Settings Files button. Click Apply to synchronize the settings.*

Photoshop, Illustrator, InDesign, and Acrobat X Pro will now be able to use the same color settings. Each application will render color the same way, so color across the applications will look consistent on screen and will print consistently.

If you do not wish to implement color management, you may elect to use what is termed a safe CMYK workflow. A safe CMYK workflow ensures that CMYK color numbers are preserved all the way to the final output device, as opposed to being converted by the color management system. This workflow is beneficial if you want to incrementally adopt color management practices. For example, you can use CMYK profiles to soft-proof without risking unintended color conversions before final output.

Illustrator and InDesign support a safe CMYK workflow by default; when you open or import a CMYK image with an embedded profile, the software ignores the profile and preserves the raw color numbers. If you want your Creative Suite application to adjust color numbers based on an embedded profile, change the CMYK color policy to Preserve Embedded Profiles in the Color Settings dialog box. You can easily restore the safe CMYK workflow by changing the CMYK color policy back to Preserve Numbers (Ignore Linked Profiles).

You can override safe CMYK settings when you print a document or save it to PDF. However, doing so may cause colors to be rendered in different color values. For example, pure CMYK black objects may be re-separated as rich black. For more information on color management options for printing and saving PDFs, consult the Help files for each Creative Suite 6 component.

## Color Swatches

Creative Suite 6 components can easily share solid color swatches by using the Adobe Swatch Exchange (ASE) format. This makes it easy to establish standard swatches for a project, regardless of the originating application. Note that patterns, tints, and gradients cannot be stored in the ASE format.

For example, to save swatches from an InDesign document, select a range of swatches in the Swatches panel, and then choose Save Swatches from the Swatches panel menu. You are prompted to name and save the swatch file, and InDesign creates a file with the file extension .ase, containing all the selected swatches.

To import swatches from an Adobe Swatch Exchange file, choose Load Swatches from the Swatches panel in Photoshop, Illustrator, or InDesign, and navigate to the saved .ase file. All solid swatches—regardless of color mode—are imported.

## OPENTYPE FONT FORMAT

Photoshop, Illustrator, and InDesign fully support the extended features of OpenType® fonts. The OpenType format offers exciting features for designers, while being compatible with a wide range of imaging devices and workflow systems. Among the features of OpenType fonts are:

- Cross-platform compatibility. A file created on a PC using OpenType fonts can be opened on a Macintosh computer using the same OpenType fonts, without any text alteration or reflow.
- Extended character sets, including ligatures for many letter combinations. These discretionary ligatures are correctly interpreted during spellcheck. (Not all OpenType fonts include discretionary ligatures.)
- Special characters such as diacriticals for non-English text, swashes, and arbitrary fractions (again, not available in all OpenType fonts). In PostScript fonts, such features have traditionally required the use of separate fonts (called Expert Sets) containing the special characters. Since an OpenType font can have in excess of 65,000 characters, all of these special features can be incorporated within one font.
- Unicode number identification of characters. Unicode numbering means that, if a character exists in more than one OpenType font, it exists at the same position in the font. Thus, changing the font used by text would not result in missing or incorrect characters. (Again, not all special characters exist in all OpenType fonts, and switching to an OpenType font that did not have the desired special character would result in a “notdef” (not defined) character, usually indicated by a rectangle, where the character should be.)

OpenType fonts coexist peacefully with PostScript Type 1 and TrueType fonts without conflict. Adobe OpenType fonts have distinct names (such as Helvetica LT Std or Adobe Garamond Pro) that prevent font conflicts and allow easy identification in font listings. You should have no imaging issues whatsoever with OpenType fonts, regardless of the font vendor. For more information on OpenType font technology, see <http://www.adobe.com/go/opentype>.

# Chapter 2: Adobe InDesign CS6

For most designers and service providers, InDesign is the cornerstone of Adobe Creative Suite 6 Design & Web Premium and Design Standard. The advanced layout and output capabilities in InDesign expand creative freedom and streamline production workflows.

## INDESIGN CS6: NEW FEATURES

- **Link Badge:** The new Link badge provides a quick and easy way to determine the link status of the graphic in a frame, as well as instant access to the graphic's entry in the Links panel by Alt/Opt-clicking the badge. Click the Modified badge (yellow alert triangle) to update a modified graphic. Click the Missing badge (red stop sign) to relink to the correct graphic. The Link badge is not visible if the document is in Preview mode or if Overprint Preview has been invoked. To hide the badges, choose View > Extras > Hide Link Badge.



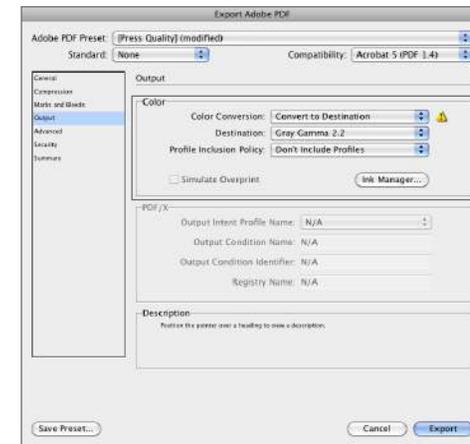
### Link Badge

Immediately see the status of a linked graphic. Click to update or relink, or Alt/Opt-click to view the entry in the Links panel.

- **Export For Users of CS4 and Later:** To save for users of earlier versions, choose File > Export and select InDesign Markup Language (IDML). Or, choose File > Save As, and select InDesign CS4 or later (IDML). Keep in mind that CS4 does not support some features introduced in newer versions, such as multiple page sizes or Acrobat forms creation. Always use caution when taking this approach. It is recommended that you first make sure that the file is complete and without

errors. Then, create a PDF and send that with the links, fonts, and IDML file so the recipient can check the converted file against the PDF.

- **Export to Grayscale PDF:** Now you can create grayscale PDFs during export, without generating PostScript or resorting to color conversions in Acrobat. In the Output tab of the Export Adobe PDF dialog, choose *Convert to Destination*, and set the Destination to *Gray Gamma 2.2* (or a custom grayscale profile if you have one).

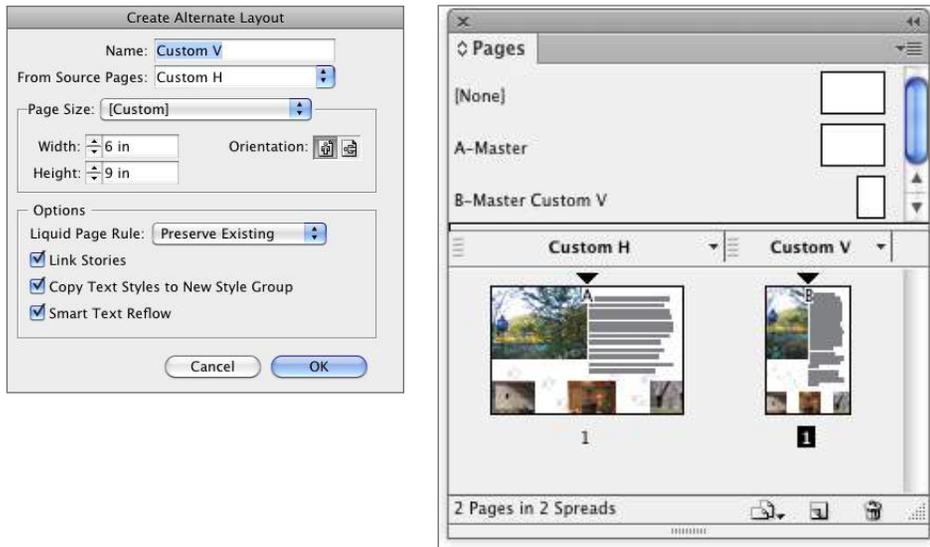


### Using Output Settings to Generate a Grayscale PDF

Export a grayscale PDF directly from InDesign, without needing to create PostScript or use Acrobat's Convert Colors to perform a conversion.

- **Liquid Layout Rules:** The new Liquid Layout feature allows you to set rules controlling the scaling and positioning of content when page dimensions are altered. If you have used Layout Adjustment in the past, you will find Liquid Layout controls much more flexible and granular. Liquid Layout options are especially useful in documents using the new Alternate Layouts feature. For more detailed information on the Liquid Layout tools, see the InDesign Help Guide.

- **Alternate Layouts:** InDesign CS6 supports multiple layouts within a single document. Essentially a special kind of section, alternate layouts are a solution to the need for multiple page sizes for digital publishing to tablets, but they are also useful for creating multiple sizes within a project intended solely for print. This can be useful for versioning or for creating content for multiple output formats, without having to manage multiple documents. By applying Liquid Layout rules, you can enable InDesign to automatically scale and reposition content in alternate layouts, greatly speeding production.



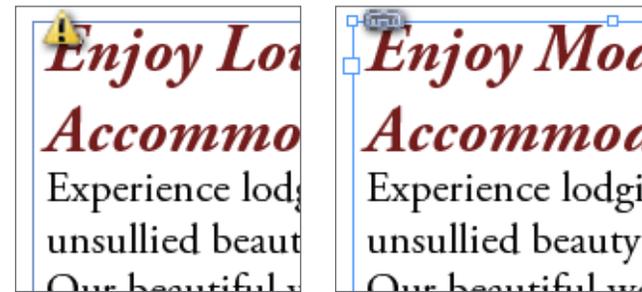
### Creating An Alternate Layout

Create related layouts of any size and orientation within a single document. Text frames in the alternate layouts are linked to the original text frames in the initial layout.

To create an alternate layout, choose Create Alternate Layout from the Pages panel menu. InDesign assumes you want a layout whose dimensions are the opposite orientation of the original layout (i.e., if you start with a portrait orientation, the initial orientation of the new layout will be landscape), but you can specify any dimensions.

Note that text in an original layout is linked to instances of the same text in alternate layouts, in a parent-child relationship. A small link icon

is displayed on the top left corner of text frames on alternate layouts, indicating the status of that relationship. Linked stories also appear in the Links panel along with graphic links. If you edit text on the original layout, text frames in alternate layouts will display a yellow triangle alert indicating that the original text has changed. Choose the Selection Tool (black arrow), click the yellow alert icon, and text is instantly updated. You can choose whether or not to update "child" frames to reflect the edits to the "parent" frame, but Preflight will display an out-of-date link if you do not update linked stories.



### Linked Stories: The Relationship Between Alternate Layouts

The yellow triangle alert indicates that the original text has been edited. Click the triangle to update the text in the alternate layout. You can also update linked text frames in the Links panel.

- **Content Collector and Content Placer Tools:** The new Content Collector (⌘+D), Content Placer (⌘+P), and Content Conveyor allow you to easily harvest content and place it elsewhere. Think of these tools as an enhanced Copy/Paste. These tools are helpful when creating Alternate Layouts, or when populating related documents within a project. The Content Conveyor provides an important option: You can create text and graphic links between layouts or even across documents.



### Content Collector, Content Placer, and Content Conveyor

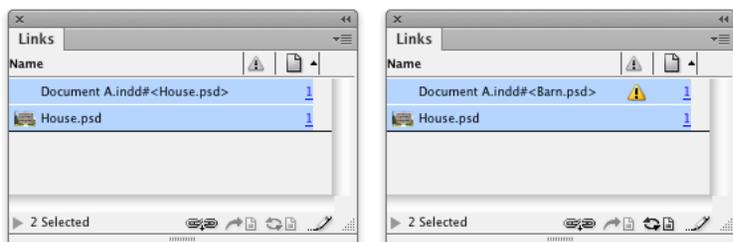
Gather, store, and deposit graphics and text across pages, layouts, even separate documents, and create links to original content.

**Cross-document links appear twice in the Links panel, which can initially be confusing. But there's a logic to this:** The disk file for a graphic itself is referenced, as well as the status of its relationship to the instance of the graphic in the original document.

**Example:** Document "A" contains the placed graphic "House.psd." Using the Content Collector and Placer tools, the designer picks up the frame containing the graphic and places a linked duplicate into Document "B".

**The Links panel in Document "A" shows one link for "House.psd." But the Links panel in Document "B" shows *two* link entries—one for the status of the graphic on disk, and one for the status of the graphic in Document "A".**

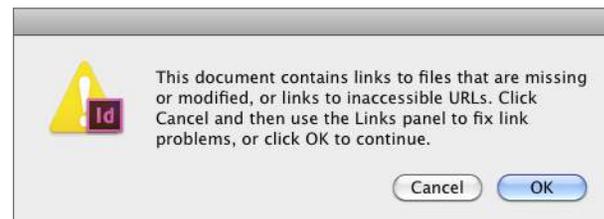
**When the designer replaces "House.psd" in Document "A" with a new image, "Barn.psd," the Links panel in Document "B" will reflect this alteration. The link representing the placed image shows that the image on disk is current, but the link representing the frame's link to Document "A" shows that Document "A" has changed.**



#### Cross-Document Linked Graphics: Entries In Links Panel

*In this document, the graphic in the original document has been changed. The top selected link refers to the disk file for the graphic that was initially used in this document. The lower selected link indicates that, while the disk file is current, the graphic has been replaced in the original document, so the frame in this document does not reflect the state of its linked frame in the original document.*

If you choose not to update the linked graphic in Document "B", you will receive a missing Link alert if you attempt to export a PDF. However, if the original graphic file is available, the PDF will still contain healthy, high-resolution content—it will just be a different graphic from that in Document "A".



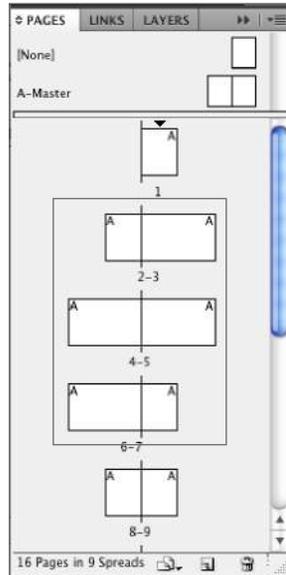
Following the example of the fictional Documents A and B above, perform an experiment to familiarize yourself with this new feature so that you will be prepared to manage customer files that contain cross-document links.

- **New Pantone PLUS Swatch Libraries:** The Pantone libraries have been updated in InDesign CS6—they are now the new Pantone PLUS libraries. All spot libraries now use Lab color values; only the CMYK Coated/Uncoated and Color Bridge Coated/Uncoated provide CMYK values. In new projects, this should present no problem. However, if a customer submits a new version of a file containing spot colors which are intended to be printed in process, with the expectation that the converted colors will match previously-printed jobs containing the same spot colors converted to process using older values, you may face a challenge. Older InDesign documents will open with the older definitions; if you convert a spot color to CMYK, the older values will be used. However, if you add a *new* spot color swatch, it will be based on the new PLUS definitions, and will use those values if it is converted to CMYK. These updated Pantone libraries should have no effect on reprint jobs, since earlier InDesign files will use the older spot-to-CMYK conversions.

## FEATURES INTRODUCED IN CS5/5.5

InDesign CS5/5.5 introduced many features to enhance productivity, both for designers and print service providers. Such new features include:

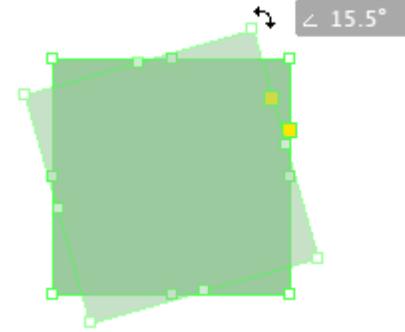
- **Multiple Page Sizes:** Using the new Page tool () , select a master page or document page and changed its dimensions using the Width and Height fields in the Control panel. Now, gatefolds and standard pages can be built into the same document. When the document is exported to PDF, each page retains its unique dimensions. While this provides great flexibility to document designers, it may require special handling in export and imposition to ensure correct pagination.



### Multiple Page Sizes

*Gatefolds and standard pages can be built into the same document by using the Page tool.*

- **Easier Object Transforms:** You can now rotate selected objects with the Selection tool, without having to switch to the dedicated Rotate or Scale tools. Move the cursor just a bit outside the corner of an object or group and, when the cursor becomes a curved arrow, rotate the object. The current angle is displayed in a gray flag as you rotate.



- **Manipulate Multiple Objects:** Scale and rotate multiple objects without having to group them, by using the bounding box of selected objects.
- **Live Corner Effects:** Click the small yellow square near the upper right corner of a selected rectangle, and yellow diamond-shaped controls appear on each corner, enabling you to apply corner effects. Effects include rounded, bevel, inset, and fancy corners. Hold down Shift to manipulate just one corner. Hold down Alt (PC) or Option (Mac) to cycle through available corner effects. Hold down Shift and Alt/Option to cycle through corner effects on just one corner. You can also use the controls in the Corner Options dialog (Object > Corner Options) to control individual corners numerically.
- **Content Grabber:** You no longer have to switch to the Direct Selection tool to select a graphic within a frame. Hover near the center of a frame containing a graphic, and a viewfinder-like icon appears, indicating that you can just click to use the Content Grabber to reposition the graphic without affecting the frame. Click to select the graphic so you can scale or rotate the graphic. The Content Grabber is on by default, but can be turned off by choosing View > Extras > Hide Content Grabber.



### Content Grabber

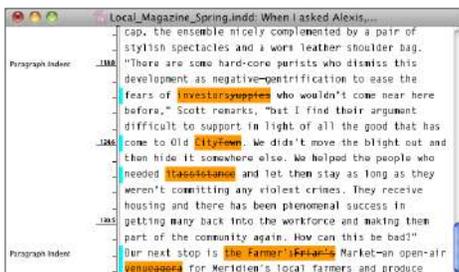
*Click to select a graphic without switching to the Direct Selection tool.*

If you turn off the Content Grabber (View > Extras > Hide Content Grabber), you can double-click a frame to select the graphic inside for scaling or repositioning. Double-click again to return to normal selection mode.

- **Fill and Stroke controls in the Control Panel:** Choose fill and stroke colors in the Control panel without needing to open the Swatches panel.
- **Gap Tool:** Drag to move or resize the channels between frames, rather than having to move the edges of the frames themselves.
- **Easier Selection of Objects in Groups:** Double-click on a grouped object to select a group member without needing to ungroup. Double-click to drill down through groups within groups, and you can then modify the individual object. Double-click to go up one level in grouping, or press the Escape key.
- **Auto-Fit:** This new frame fitting option automatically scales graphic content when the containing frame is resized, while attempting to retain cropping. No keyboard modifier keys are required.
- **Document Fonts Folder:** During the Package process, InDesign now creates a font folder named "Document fonts" which is automatically

recognized by InDesign when an InDesign file in the same directory is opened. Fonts in that specially-designated folder are activated by InDesign without assistance from any font management program or plug-in. Activated fonts are available only to InDesign, and are deactivated when the file is closed. This new feature can ensure that you are using your customers' fonts when processing submitted files, rather than substituting fonts available on your system.

- **Layers Panel:** Individual objects can now be selected, hidden, locked, and named in the Layers panel, which closely resembles Illustrator's Layers panel. Drag selected objects up and down in the Layers panel list to precisely control stacking order. Target objects that are part of a group, without having to ungroup. Targeting objects through the Layers panel also ensures that objects are not inadvertently moved while changing other attributes, such as Fill and Stroke attributes. Target an object by clicking the colored square to the right of the object's entry in the Layers panel. Target all locked objects in a layer by clicking on the colored square to the right of the layer name. Place graphics are represented in the Layers panel by their filename (but this can be edited). Text frames are represented by the first few words of text in the frame (and that can also be changed).
- **Track Text Changes:** If there are multiple collaborators on a document, you can now track the text changes introduced, by activating Track Changes. Choose Window > Editorial > Track Changes, then choose Enable Tracking in All Stories from the panel menu. Click in text, then choose Edit > Edit in Story Editor. Markups appear only in the Story Editor, not in the layout view, however, changes in either view are tracked, and the layout reflects the cumulative changes. If the document is printed, the current appearance of the layout is rendered. Changes can be accepted or rejected in the Story Editor view, or in the Track Changes panel.



## Track Changes

*When Track Changes is activated, markups and alterations from multiple editors are highlighted when the text is viewed in the Story Editor. The layout (normal) view of the document reflects the results of all edits; markups are only displayed in the Story Editor.*

- **Background Export:** Exporting to IDML (InDesign Markup Language) or print PDFs are background processes, freeing you up to continue working in InDesign. To view progress, choose Window > Utilities > Background Tasks. Multiple documents can be queued up for PDF export. There is no option to make print PDF export a foreground process: To ensure that you're aware of the export process, you may elect to keep the Background Tasks panel open. Note that export to the Interactive PDF format (inappropriate for print) is *not* a background process.

NOTE: If you wish to disable background processes in InDesign CS5, CS5.5, or CS6, follow these steps (you do not need to quit and re-launch InDesign):

### Windows:

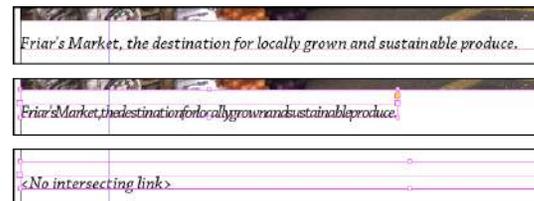
1. Create an empty plain-text file named DisableAsyncExports.txt.
2. Place the text file loose in the InDesign application folder.

### Mac OS:

1. Create an empty plain-text file named DisableAsyncExports.txt.
  2. In the InDesign application folder, right-click (or Control-Click) on the application (e.g., Adobe InDesign CS6.app) and select Show Package Contents from the contextual menu.
  3. In the Contents folder, open the MacOS folder.
  4. Place the text file inside the MacOS folder.
- **Mini Bridge:** Mini Bridge is a subset of Adobe Bridge that is available as a panel within InDesign, allowing you to navigate your file system

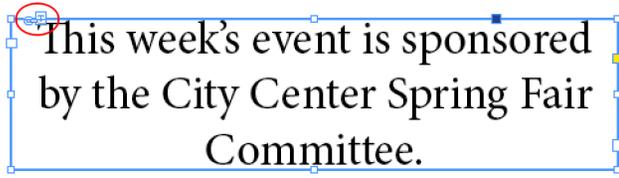
and preview files as thumbnails. You can drag and drop files from Mini Bridge to InDesign to place text and graphics into a document (this is the equivalent of using File > Place). You can also drag objects into Mini Bridge to create snippets.

- **Live Captions:** Captions can be generated from metadata embedded in graphics. To set up the recipe for captions (data fields to be used, paragraph style to be applied, etc.), choose Object > Captions > Caption Setup. To generate the caption text frame, select the frame containing the graphic and choose Object > Generate Live Caption (or Generate Static Caption). Live captions update when the parent graphics frame content is updated, but because live captions are generated text, it is non-breaking and will not wrap. Static Captions allow text to break, but do not update if the image or its metadata are altered. If a text frame containing a Live Caption is repositioned so it does not touch a graphics frame (or if the graphic is deleted from the frame), the text frame will read "No intersecting link."



- **Interactive document design with SWF file export:** Transform page layouts into dynamic SWF files without working in the Adobe Flash® authoring environment. Animate page content, and add multimedia features. Create digital documents with interactive buttons, hyperlinks, and unique page transitions for playback in the Adobe Flash Player runtime or through a Web browser. Print projects can easily be repurposed to become engaging Web content, without writing code.
- **Default Font:** The default font starting with InDesign CS5 is Minion Pro, an OpenType font which is installed with InDesign. This minimizes spurious "Missing Font" messages.

- **Improved EPUB export:** Articles feature defines relationships between page content; support for table headers and footers and InDesign-generated Table of Contents.
- **Linked Stories:** Place the same text in multiple locations in a document, creating a parent/child relationship between the text instances. Update the parent story, and all other instances reflect the updates. Any formatting or editing changes to instances of the text will be lost if the parent text is edited, but frame attributes are retained.



#### Linked Text

*The small link icon indicates that this text is a "child" instance of linked text. Any formatting in this frame will be lost during updating if the text is edited in the original "parent" frame.*

- **Integration with Adobe Digital Publishing Suite:** Use the Folio Builder and Folio Overlay features to prepare an InDesign file for publishing to tablet readers (For additional information, see <http://www.adobe.com/products/digital-publishing-suite-family.html>).
- **Export to PDF/X-4:2010:** This revision to the PDF/X-4:2008 specification supports JPEG2000 compression and layers. Creates Acrobat 7-compatible (PDF 1.6) files. (Available in the Standards pull-down menu in the PDF export dialog, only in InDesign.)

## Notable Existing Features

Many features introduced in earlier versions of InDesign are powerful aids to print production. These include:

- **Live Preflight:** Preflight while you design. Continuous preflighting alerts you to potential production problems in real time so you can quickly navigate to a problem, fix it directly in layout, and keep working. InDesign's Live Preflight function is configurable to check for

conditions specific to your workflow. Define and share custom profiles to pinpoint problems early in the life of a job. A Preflight indicator in the status bar at the lower left of the document window dynamically displays the current Preflight state of the document. A green light in the status bar indicates that the document currently meets the preflight profile in effect. A red light indicates preflight problems; open the Preflight panel for detailed information. The dynamic preflight behavior enables designers to monitor the content of their documents throughout the design process, rather than discovering problems by preflighting just before they send their job for print. Consider creating custom Preflight profiles for your workflows and encouraging customers to use those profiles when submitting jobs.

- **Customizable Links panel:** Find, sort, and manage all of your document's placed files in the customizable Links panel. View attributes that are most critical to your workflow such as scale, rotation, and resolution. Links Panel options allow you to choose whether to display columns that display Effective PPI, color space, rotation, and much more. The new Relink to Folder speeds the updating of links by allowing you to target a folder.
- **Smart Guides:** Quickly align, space, rotate, and resize single or multiple objects with the help of dynamic guides. The guides, object dimensions, rotation angles, and x and y coordinates appear dynamically so you can quickly snap an object's edge or its vertical or horizontal center to another nearby object or page edge in the layout.
- **Spread rotation:** Temporarily rotate the spread view without physically turning your monitor. Enjoy full editing capability at 90-, 180- and 270-degree angles so that you can easily include non-horizontal elements in your designs. Note that the rotation is just a display effect that makes it easier to work on rotated content; rotated spreads print in their original, unrotated orientation.
- **Smart Text Reflow:** Automatically add pages at the end of a story, selection, or document when text is overset using this new preference. Smart Text Reflow works hand-in-hand with conditional text as pages

are automatically deleted or added when conditional text is hidden or shown in the document.

- **Conditional text:** Deliver multiple versions of a document for different users, all from a single InDesign source file. Hide text at paragraph, word, and even character level without relying on layers. The remaining text and anchored objects automatically reflow in the layout.
- **Cross-references:** Simplify the writing, production, and management of long documents with flexible and powerful cross-references that dynamically update as content is changed or moved within a document.

As cross-media publishing grows, your customers may wish to repurpose their print content for online use. InDesign CS6 enables designers and print production operators to create interactive online content without learning an extensive new set of skills:

- **Page transitions in SWF and PDF files:** Apply page transitions such as wipe, dissolve, fade, and more to individual pages or all spreads, and output to SWF or PDF. Preview a page transition before it is applied, and experiment with speed and direction for greater design control. You can even add a page curl effect during SWF export.
- **Export to Adobe Flash CS6 Professional (FLA):** Export InDesign documents to the FLA format and open them in Adobe Flash CS6 Professional with the visual fidelity of your original InDesign layout maintained. Use Flash to add sophisticated interactivity, animation, and navigation to complex layouts for an engaging reading experience.

## PREPARING INDESIGN DOCUMENTS FOR OUTPUT

Your particular workflow will dictate some of the operations you perform on incoming InDesign files; for example, you may wish to substitute a four-color rich black formula in large areas of black that the customer built as 100%-process black. You may need to re-separate customer images to accommodate the total ink limit of the press running the job,

and so on. But there are some general operations that you should consider performing on every job, as part of preparing it for imaging.

### Cleaning up extraneous content in files

While extra content such as non-printing objects, hidden objects, and objects outside the page limits won't actually image, such content can add to file size and file complexity, or even produce unnecessary alerts.

### Cleaning up the Pasteboard

Objects in the pasteboard area do not image, nor do they appear in exported PDF files, unless they fall within the designated bleed or slug area. But the proxy representations of graphics used in those objects are still present in the file, and they contribute to file size. When a file is packaged, InDesign does not include the links for objects in the pasteboard that are fully outside the printable area of the document. However, when the file is opened on another computer, it produces a Missing Link alert triggered by that absent content, that at first appears to be a problem. However, links in the pasteboard area are marked by the page designation "PB" in the Links panel, which will help you narrow down the issue. To prevent future confusion, delete unused content in the pasteboard area.

### Unused layers

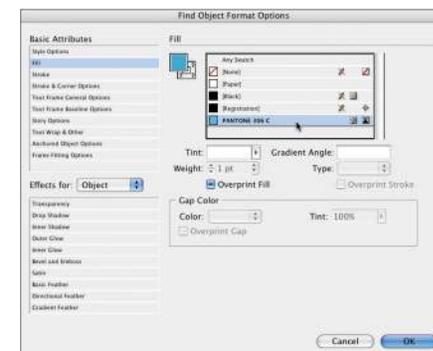
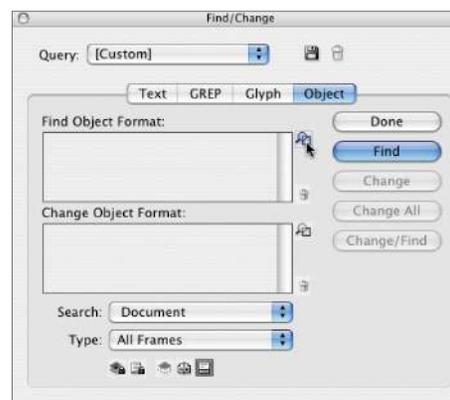
Empty layers don't cause any problems in imaging, but deleting them from a complex document may facilitate troubleshooting or other file operations. In the Layers panel menu, choose Delete Unused Layers. There's no confirmation or intermediate alert; the layers are instantly deleted.

### Managing swatches

Like empty layers, unused swatches have no impact on output, but you may find that simplifying an overly long list of swatches makes it easier to see what inks are actually used in the document. To eliminate unused swatches, choose Select All Unused from the Swatches panel menu, and then click the Trash Can icon at the bottom of the Swatches panel to delete the selected swatches. If you are unable to delete a swatch

you believe to be unused, it's possible that it's used by imported artwork. If so, you will be unable to delete the swatch. To determine if a spot-color swatch is used by imported artwork, you can use Separations Preview (Window > Output > Separations Preview) to search for objects using the swatch. In a long document, this may be tedious, but it's effective. Process swatches, of course, will not generate unnecessary plates.

To find InDesign objects such as text, lines, or frames that use unwanted swatches, use the enhanced Find/Change function. Choose Edit > Find/Change, select the Object tab at the top of the dialog box, and then click the small magnifying glass icon to the right of the Find Object Format area of the dialog box. The Find Object Format Options dialog box opens; select Fill in the left column, and select the name of the swatch in the swatch list at the right. Click OK, return to the Find/Change dialog box, and click the Find button. The first object filled with the swatch should be highlighted. If nothing is highlighted, or if the alert "Cannot Find Match" appears, click the small trash can to the right of the Find Object Format field to clear the attributes, and click the magnifying glass to return to the Find Object Format Options dialog box. Change the Attribute from Fill to Stroke, click OK, and run Find again. If you still can't find an object, you can continue eliminating attributes such as shadows, and so on. And note that if the swatch name does not appear in this list, this indicates that there is no InDesign-created object using the swatch; that alone eliminates one of the possible causes of the mystery swatch.



### Find/Change to Locate Objects by Attributes

Click the Object tab at the top of the dialog box (above); then click the magnifying glass to open the Find Object Format Options dialog box (right).

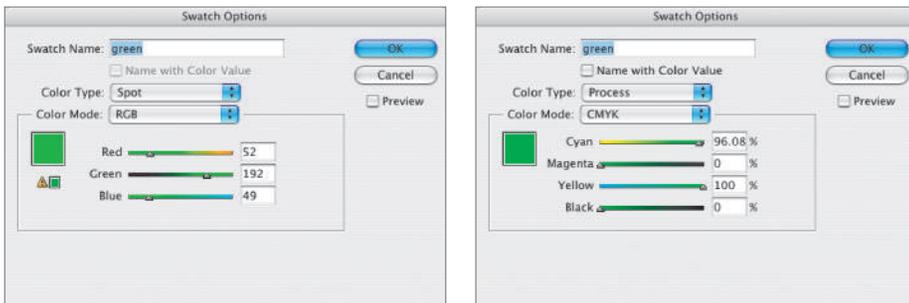
If you cannot locate any page elements using the unwanted spot color, but are still concerned that an unwanted plate may be output as a result of artwork you've overlooked, try this: Print the file as separated output to a laser printer, selecting only the problem plate for output. If no objects or artwork are using the problem swatch, when you start to print, an alert will appear that the selected pages do not use the ink.

If you determine that the swatch is truly not used in the document, you should feel confident that no unnecessary plates will be generated by the file. However, you may want to delete the swatch to avoid confusing anyone who handles the file later in the prepress process. If you still can't delete the swatch, try exporting the file to InDesign Markup Language to clean it up. Choose File > Export, and choose InDesign Markup Language as the format. A file with the extension .idml is created. Close the problem file, and open the IDML file. You should now be able to delete the problem swatch, and save the file under a new name.

## Editing swatches

It's better to manage, examine, and edit colors when they are saved as swatches. To find colors used in the document that are not designated as named swatches, choose Add Unnamed Colors from the Swatches panel menu. InDesign then finds all colors and adds them to the Swatches panel list. Check for RGB or Lab colors that may not output as expected, because they will be converted to CMYK during most print or output operations.

To edit a swatch, double-click the swatch name in the Swatches panel; the Swatch Options dialog appears. Use the Color Type pop-up menu to choose between Spot and Process. Choose from the Color Mode pop-up menu to assign a color mode—you can choose from Lab, CMYK, and RGB, or select from the list of color swatchbooks, such as Pantone+ Coated, TRUMATCH, Toyo, and more. Note that just setting the Color Mode to CMYK (without changing the Color Type) is not sufficient to designate a swatch as a process color. You must also change the Color Type to Process to designate the swatch as process.



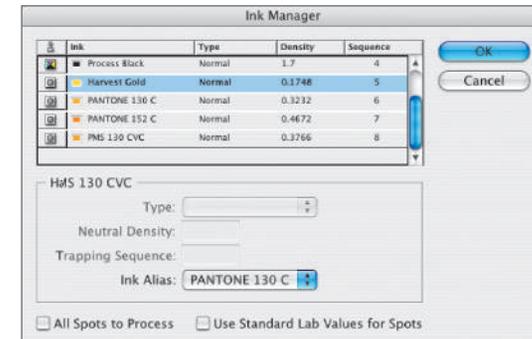
### Changing the Color Definition of a Swatch

Double-click the swatch name in the Swatches panel; you can then change the name, color type, and recipe in the Swatch Options dialog box. Here, an RGB swatch (left) is converted to CMYK for more predictable output (right).

## Using the Ink Manager

You may receive a job that uses multiple spot inks, which are actually intended to print as a single color. For example, the InDesign file may include artwork and page objects that use Pantone 130 C, Pantone 130 U, and PMS 130. Clearly, these names are intended to represent a

single ink, and the multiple ink definitions must be resolved before printing. Most RIP software allows the remapping of spot colors, to resolve extra inks to the correct plates. But you can also use the InDesign Ink Manager to rectify the superfluous colors and accomplish the same goal—correct output. The Ink Manager is available via the Swatches panel menu, the Separations Preview panel menu, in the Print dialog box, and in Export dialog boxes for EPS and PDF.



### Using the Ink Manager

Select a spot color you want to remap to another ink, and use the Ink Alias pop-up menu to select the target ink.

To remap one spot color to another spot color (or to a process plate), select the spot color in the Ink Manager dialog, and choose the appropriate plate from the Ink Alias pop-up menu. You can also use a process plate as the target ink, but you cannot map a process plate to a spot ink.

You can also check "All Spots to Process" to output all spot inks as process. This is a nondestructive option: the spot inks are not actually redefined as process colors, but print and export as process builds (all conversions and ink alias operations performed in the Ink Manager are non-destructive). Caution: if there are several different definitions of what should be one spot color, outputting the colors as CMYK may result in inconsistent color, even if you've mapped all the extra spot colors to one ink. If this is the situation, the best way to achieve color consistency is to edit all objects and placed artwork to use one spot color or one consistent CMYK recipe. This may require that you edit

placed artwork in the original applications, such as Photoshop and Illustrator, to achieve consistent color. For maximum color consistency, and to enable better printing to high-fidelity color devices, choose the “Use Standard Lab Values for Spots” option in Ink Manager.

### Using Overprint Preview to check color interactions

Use the Overprint Preview in Illustrator, InDesign, Acrobat X Pro, and Adobe Reader to check the color interactions of objects using blending modes, opacity settings, or overprint. Activating Overprint Preview in these components generates a more realistic display of artwork, providing the opportunity to catch objects that may image differently from the way they appear when viewed in the normal, composite view. Note that Acrobat X Pro and Adobe Reader 9 now automatically activate Overprint Preview when opening PDF/X files. Overprint Preview can also be controlled in Preferences in both Acrobat Pro and Adobe Reader.

### About InDesign Program Versions

InDesign CS6 can open a file created in any previous version of the program, with certain considerations. For example, in some environments, customers may request that the printer return final versions of files, reflecting any corrections requested by the customer or performed by the printer to facilitate imaging. While it’s possible to export a file from InDesign CS6 as an IDML (InDesign Markup Language) file, opening that file in InDesign CS4 through CS5.5 may result in some content being modified or lost.

Some content, such as alternate layouts, doesn’t exist in CS4; that content will be modified (or deleted) when an IDML file from CS6 is opened in InDesign CS4. Thus, file fidelity will be lost in attempting to “round-trip” such files between CS6 and CS4, and back again. Consequently, it’s preferable to keep InDesign files in the original version throughout the life of the job, if possible.

### Cross-platform issues

While InDesign files and popular graphics formats originating on a PC can be opened on a Mac (and vice versa), fonts can still be an issue. Windows-format TrueType fonts can be used under Macintosh OS X, and OpenType fonts are fully cross-platform. Windows PostScript Type 1 fonts can be recognized by Adobe applications on the Macintosh, but will not be active for other, non-Adobe applications. Attempting to replace a font with what seems to be the cross-platform equivalent can easily result in a changed appearance, or text reflow.

Using a font-conversion utility to convert a PC font to a Mac font (or vice versa) may result in a font with changed font metrics, which may result in text reflow. Additionally, you may find that the End User License Agreement (EULA) for the font forbids such conversions. It is recommended that for InDesign documents that use either Macintosh format Type 1 fonts, Macintosh TrueType, or Macintosh .dfont fonts, unless you can procure Windows versions of such fonts that provide an exact match, you should not attempt cross-platform edits. For this reason, Adobe most strongly recommends use of cross-platform OpenType fonts.

### Managing missing fonts

When you open an InDesign file that’s missing fonts, the Missing Fonts alert lists those fonts needed by InDesign that are not available. Note, however, that this initial list does not reference any fonts needed by placed graphics.



#### Missing Fonts Alert

*When you open an InDesign file that uses fonts currently unavailable on the system, you’re presented with an alert listing the missing fonts. However, only fonts used by InDesign are listed in this alert: fonts used in support artwork are not listed here.*

Clicking the Find Font button takes you to the Find Font dialog box, in which all fonts required by the document itself are listed, as well as fonts needed by placed art (indicated by an  icon). Click the Find First button to navigate to the first use of the font in the document. (The Find Font dialog box is available at any time by choosing Type > Find Font.)



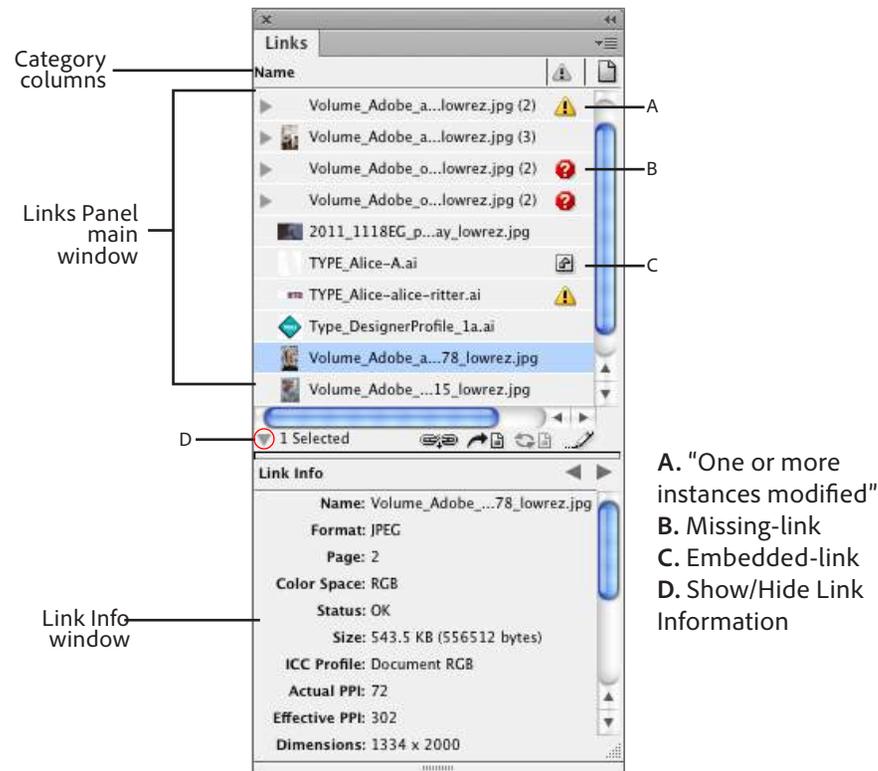
**Using the Find Font feature**  
*InDesign's Find Font feature lists fonts used by InDesign, as well as any fonts used by placed graphics. Here, a font is used by a placed Illustrator file, but is not available on the system. (Illustrator embeds fonts with suitable permissions, but won't embed fonts that disallow embedding.)*

To replace a needed font in the Find Font dialog box, select the font name in the top window of the dialog box, and then choose a replacement font family and style in the Replace With fields. Replacing fonts does not, by default, change style definitions. To do that, check the Redefine Style option. Keep in mind that replacing fonts will change the appearance of text and possibly cause reflow. It's preferable to use the correct fonts originally specified by the designer, unless you have been given permission to replace fonts. While you can designate replacement fonts for text created in InDesign, you cannot replace fonts in placed graphics; for that, you'll have to open the artwork in the originating application and make the change, resave, and update in InDesign. Again, consult the file's creator to obtain the correct font, or permission to substitute an available font. When you preflight a file in InDesign, the application checks for fonts needed by placed artwork and reports any missing fonts. When you package a file, InDesign gathers up all necessary fonts—including those required by (but not

embedded in) placed artwork, provided that all required fonts are active on the system.

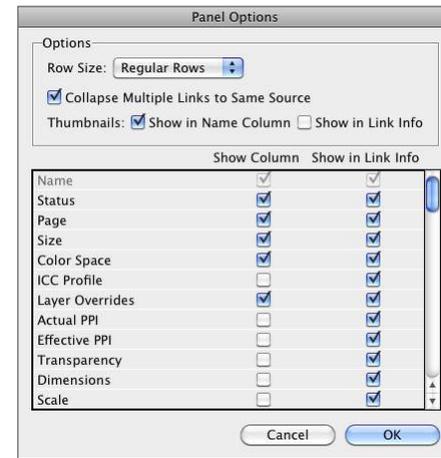
## LINKS PANEL

In addition to providing methods for locating, updating, and relinking graphics used in an InDesign file, the Links panel can provide detailed information about linked and embedded graphics. Common functions, such as relinking graphics, are easy to perform.



Features of the Links Panel include:

- **Links Panel main window:** Thumbnails are displayed for each link, making it easy to quickly identify graphics in the Links list. The links list can be sorted by file name, page, status, and more, by clicking on the column header icons at the top of the Links panel.
- Graphics placed multiple times in a document are displayed as single entries, with a disclosure triangle by the file name to allow you to view all instances of the graphic.
- The Modified icon for multiple instances of a graphic is different from the Modified icon for a single placed file, making it obvious that some — but not all — instances have been modified.
- For graphics not placed on a document page, the Links panel also displays PB for items on the pasteboard, a Master page identifier (such as A for a graphic on the A Master spread), OV for a graphic anchored in overset text, and HT for a graphic anchored in hidden Conditional text.
- **Link Info window** (*an expansion to the Links panel*): Click the disclosure triangle at the bottom of the Links panel to display extensive information about a selected link, including scale factor, dimensions, effective ppi, and much more.
- **Panel Options:** Available through the Links panel menu, Panel Options include row size, thumbnails, and controls for displaying an extensive list of information for each link. The options allow you to customize the information displayed in the Links panel. You can choose whether to have the selected information displayed in a column in the main Links panel window, or as a listed item in the Link Info window below. These options govern what is displayed in the Links Panel, as well as the Link info window that is part of the Links panel. If you add multiple new options under Show Column, you will have to widen the display of the Links panel to view all the columns. By default, the most commonly needed options are displayed in columns in the main window of the Links panel, and the remainder are displayed in a list in the Info panel.



### Links Panel Options

Choose which information is displayed in the Links panel, as well as the Link Info window (part of the Links panel). Note that the more options you select in Show Column, the wider the Links panel can become. You can sort the Links list by the icon at the top of any column. Readily-available information on color space, ICC profiles, effective resolution, scaling, rotation, and transparency can speed your evaluation and troubleshooting for customer files.

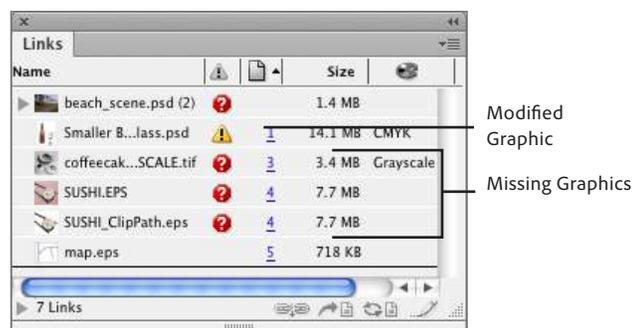
- **Utilities:** Available through the Links panel menu, Utilities include Copy Links To (which copies selected links to a designated folder) and options for copying the full directory path of a selected link.
- **Other features:** The Links panel menu offers options to Edit Original, Reveal in Finder or Reveal in Bridge, and to embed or unembed graphics.

### Managing links and relinking imported files

If your client has used the InDesign Package feature to organize and submit files, and you haven't altered the directory structure of the submitted folders or renamed any of the support files, all graphic links should be current. If, however, you have moved the support files, renamed the Links folder created during the Package process, or renamed the files themselves, you will have to refresh the links to support files.

To update modified links, select one of the links in the Links panel which displays a yellow triangle alert (indicating it has been modified).

Then, from the Links panel menu, choose Update All Links. All modified links will then be updated. Alternatively, you can Option-click (Mac) or Alt-click (PC) the Update icon (↻) in the Links panel to update all modified links.

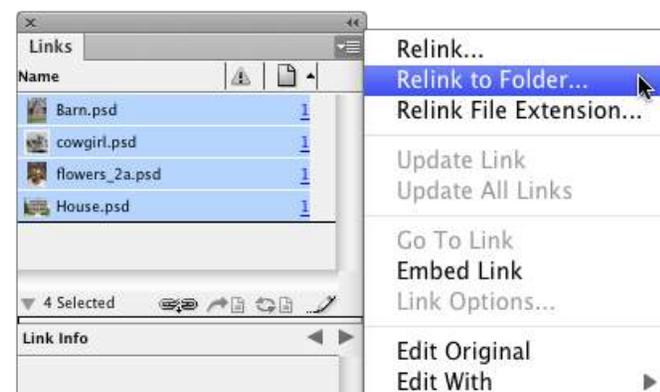


### Missing and Modified Graphics

The red stop signs indicate links that are missing—they've been moved or renamed. The yellow triangle indicates a file that has been modified since the InDesign file was last opened.

To link to missing files, select the name of a missing graphic in the Links panel (Window > Links), click the Relink button on the bottom of the panel (↻), and navigate to the first of the missing files, and relink. If all missing files are stored in the same directory (and have not been renamed), all of them will be updated automatically. If the files are distributed over several directories, you'll have to relink to one file in each directory; the remaining files in the directories will be updated automatically.

If all links are current, but you wish to relink to different graphics with the *same file names* (for example, high-resolution versions of the currently linked low-resolution files), you can quickly relink to a folder containing the replacement graphics. Select the names of all the missing links in the Links panel, and then choose Relink to Folder from the Links panel menu. Navigate to the folder containing the correct files, and click the Choose button.

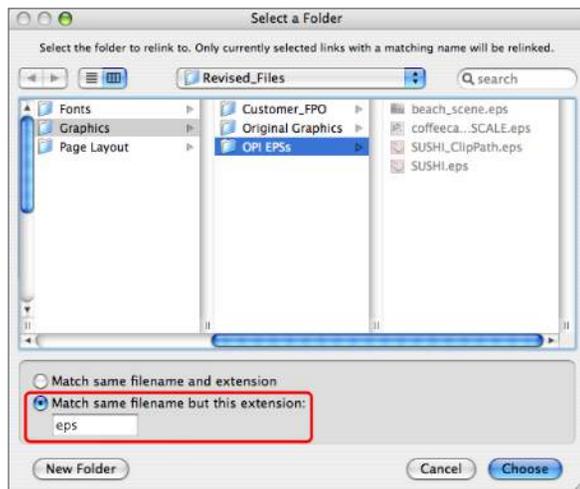


### Relink to Folder

To quickly relink graphics to graphics with the same name, but in a different folder (for example, to substitute high-resolution images for low-resolution images), select the link names and choose Relink to Folder from the Links panel menu.

If you need to link to a different file format with the same name but a different extension (for example, *Image.eps* rather than *Image.tif*), Relink to Folder contains an additional helpful option. Check the “Match same filename but this extension:” option and type the new extension. (This feature is also available as a separate option through the Links panel menu.)

You can use this option to relink to files whose names you've modified with added text: for example, if your original graphics were named with the convention *Image.eps*, but the revised graphics are named with an added “.r1” to indicate a first-round revision (e.g., *Image.r1.eps*), you can set the Relink to Folder operation to link to graphics with an “r1.eps” extension. Note that you must use a dot separator in the name as in this example; other separators, such as an underscore or dash, will not be recognized by the Relink to Folder option for matching extensions (don't enter the first dot in the Match same filename field; InDesign assumes that there is an initial dot).



### Relinking to Other File Types

The *Relink to Folder* dialog includes an option to retain the original filename, but change the extension.

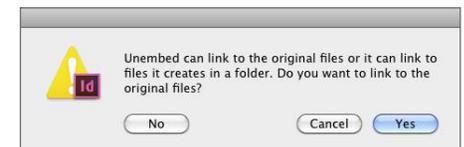
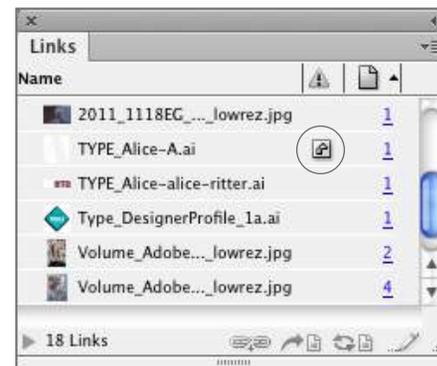
If files have been completely renamed, you'll have to manually relink to those files one by one, since InDesign cannot automatically recognize them as replacements.

### Embedded artwork

Support artwork is usually linked in InDesign files. However, you may find that a customer has embedded artwork in the file rather than linking to it, and has not supplied a copy of the original graphic. (To embed an image, select it, and then choose *Embed File* from the Links panel menu.) When you preflight a file that contains embedded graphics, the original graphic name is represented by "(Embedded)", but the graphic's page and type are still listed. The Links panel, however, lists the graphic's original name. While embedding usually doesn't cause problems in imaging, it increases the file size of the InDesign document. The artwork must be unembedded in order to be edited in an external application such as Photoshop or Illustrator.

Select the name of the link in the Links panel, and choose *Unembed File* from the panel menu. You'll be asked if you want to link to the original file; click *No* (because you don't have the original file) and

navigate to the folder where you'd like to save the unembedded file. InDesign extracts the embedded art, saves an external file with the correct name, and updates the link to the newly created file. You can now edit the graphic as necessary. Note that the result is identical to the original placed graphic before embedding—there is no change in resolution or color space. It's simply been extracted from the InDesign file and saved to disk.



### Embedded Images

An icon indicates that a graphic is embedded in the InDesign file (left). To edit the graphic, you must first unembed it and save it as an external file. Select the link in the panel, and choose *Unembed File* from the panel menu. Click *No* in the dialog box that appears (right).

### Copied and pasted artwork

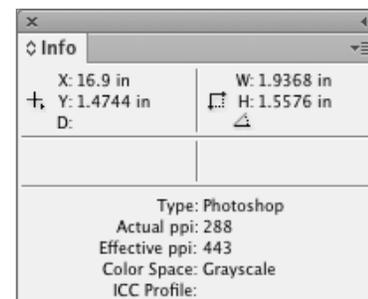
Vector artwork that shows no entry in the Links panel has likely been copied and pasted from Illustrator. This should present no problem during imaging. Pasting content from Illustrator offers the advantage of being completely editable within InDesign, but it has no relationship with the original Illustrator file. The artwork is now part of the InDesign file, independent of the Illustrator file from which it was copied, as if it had been drawn in InDesign. Thus, editing the original file in Illustrator does not change the InDesign file.

Image content copied and pasted from Photoshop, however, presents some problems. Even if the original image was CMYK, the copied content is RGB. There is no link to the original file, and thus no editability and no way of determining the file name of the original file. Essentially, it's a screen shot.

If possible, obtain the original Photoshop image from the file creator and place, rather than copy and paste, it in the InDesign file. If you cannot obtain the original image, select the image (or frame) in InDesign, and copy to the clipboard. Launch Photoshop and create a new, empty file (File > New). Accept the size Photoshop indicates—it's based on the dimensions of the image content you copied to the clipboard. Paste the image; in Photoshop CS6, it becomes a Vector Smart Object. Press Return or Enter after pasting. Then, choose Layer > Smart Objects > Rasterize. Perform the desired edits, change color space if necessary, and save the file. To update the InDesign file with the new file, select the frame containing the pasted image, choose File > Place, and navigate to the saved image you created. Above all, advise your customer not to copy and paste from Photoshop in the future. While Photoshop and InDesign allow it, it's not a good production practice.

### Determining image resolution and color space

To check the resolution and color space of an individual image, select it and consult the Info panel (Window > Info) or the Link Information area at the bottom of the Links panel. However, not all formats can be interrogated in this manner: while the Info panel displays information for TIFF, JPEG, PSD, and Photoshop EPS files, it cannot display resolution information about PDFs or Illustrator AI or EPS files containing images. Actual ppi describes the original resolution of the image as it was saved from Photoshop; Effective ppi describes the resolution of the image as it is used in InDesign. For example, a 300 ppi image that has been scaled at 200% in InDesign would have an Actual ppi of 300 x 300, and an Effective ppi of 150 x 150. This information is useful in determining if an image has been scaled beyond a desired resolution.



### Using the Info Panel

*Selected images (PSD, TIFF, EPS, and JPEG) display their resolution and color space in the Info panel.*

### Layer overrides to placed files

The Layer Overrides (Object > Object Layer Options) in InDesign allow a designer to control the display of layers in Photoshop, Illustrator, or PDF files from within InDesign CS6. A designer can even apply different layer visibility overrides to different instances of the same source file. Wise use of this technique can reduce the number of images that need to be tracked, transported, and managed, while also giving designers new flexibility and simplified file management. Applying layer overrides does not alter the original layered file; it only affects how the file displays in InDesign; files with layer overrides output as they appear on screen. Graphics governed by Object Layer are indicated in the Links panel with a "Yes" in the Layer Overrides column (if you have activated it in the Links panel option), followed by a number indicating how many layers are affected.



### Object Layer Options

*Layered graphics whose appearance is affected by Object Layer Options are indicated by a "Yes" in the Layer Overrides column. A number in parentheses indicates how many layers are affected.*

When performing any edits in Photoshop to a file using Layer Overrides, be mindful that your actions may affect multiple instances of the image. Don't delete any layers during edits—they may be needed in some instances of the image. Don't flatten the original source files for images affected by layer overrides. If your shop has historically advised flattening Photoshop layered files placed in InDesign, be sure to advise customers and staff not to flatten when layer overrides are used.

Maintain the layer names, stacking order, and layer comp definitions in each layered source file unless you need to alter the file. The Layer Options dialog box offers the choice of honoring InDesign's overrides when updating a graphic or "starting over" with the saved file's layer visibility settings. Even if you choose to honor InDesign's overrides when updating, any new layers you've added will automatically be visible.

### Raster-based Photoshop DCS and EPS files

Desktop Color Separation (DCS) files may still be used by some customers who need to include spot color plates in their color images. Because DCS files are pre-separated, it can be a challenge to integrate

them into some prepress workflows. InDesign CS6 automatically merges DCS 2.0 files created from Adobe Photoshop during printing or export, so it's easier to reuse legacy files. These enhancements are made possible because InDesign reads Photoshop DCS and EPS files as images. Reading these file types as images yields another benefit: Photoshop EPS files can be color-managed if an ICC profile was embedded. However, it is recommended that you replace such legacy files with Photoshop native PSDs or PDFs, which provide full support for spot-color content in a more modern and flexible format.

For an EPS or DCS file to benefit from these features in InDesign, the file must meet the following requirements:

- The file must be created by Photoshop.
- The file must be an 8-bit file. The CMYK, RGB, and gray color models are supported. It can include spot colors, and it can be a multitone file (such as a duotone).
- A DCS file must not be saved with the Include Vector Data option selected. (Clipping paths are supported without this option selected.)
- DCS files must conform to the DCS 1.0 or 2.0 specification.

EPS and DCS files (such as copy-dot scans) not meeting these requirements can still be placed, but they won't benefit from the enhanced workflow in InDesign. You can also elect to open DCS files in Photoshop and resave them as native Photoshop (.psd) files, and then replace the DCS files in InDesign.

### Unlinking and relinking placed text files

Unlike placed graphics files, placed text files are always completely included in the document so that the text can be edited freely in InDesign. By default, text files are not linked to a source file, although that preference can be changed. If text files are placed as linked files, and are marked as missing in the Links panel or Preflight dialog box, it

poses no problems for high-resolution printing because the text is completely included in the document.

Placed text stories can be unlinked from their source files using the Links panel. Unlinking causes InDesign to stop tracking the source text files. If a customer uses a workflow where text is only edited and formatted within Adobe InDesign after it's placed, unlinking text files prevents unnecessary alerts caused by modified or missing external text files that are no longer needed. Depending on your customers' editing workflow, you might consider adding an unlinking step to the customer checklists you provide for handing off jobs.

To unlink text files:

1. Select all text files in the Links panel. You can use the standard methods for multiple selection (Shift-click or Ctrl-click (Windows) or Command-click (Mac OS) items in the panel).
2. Choose Unlink from the Links panel menu. The unlinked items are removed from the Links panel, but the actual text content remains in the document.

While retaining links to external text files might sound attractive when text alterations are sent by a customer, note that updating a link to a supplied text file will eliminate any formatting performed in InDesign. This could wreak havoc if changed formatting is subsequently overlooked. Customers who are prone to frequent or late-stage text editing should consider using an InCopy workflow instead.

For more information on InCopy, see the InCopy product page on the Adobe website:

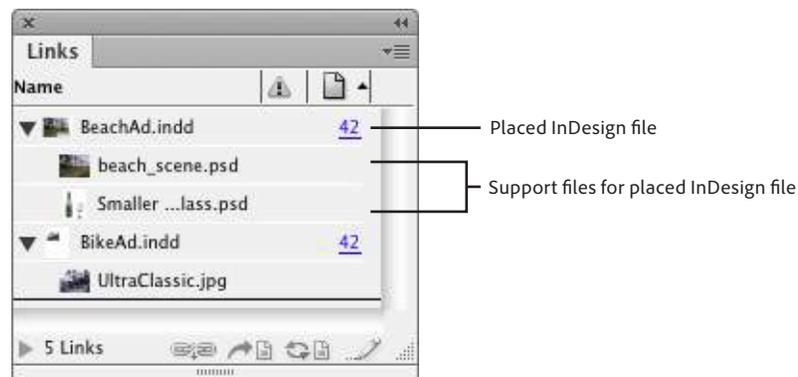
<http://www.adobe.com/products/incopy>.

## InDesign Files as artwork

InDesign files—even multipage documents—can be used as artwork; that is, you can place an InDesign file into another InDesign file, in the same manner as you would place a Photoshop or Illustrator file. This can facilitate ad placement, collaboration, even manual imposition. Files

are displayed in the Links panel in the same way as placed Photoshop or Illustrator files, with one difference: support art required by the placed InDesign file is listed below the placed file, indented to highlight its relationship to the placed InDesign file.

The InDesign Preflight function checks placed InDesign files and reports on the status of artwork and fonts needed by those placed files. In addition, placed InDesign files as well as their support art and fonts are gathered if the file is packaged.



### Placed InDesign File

*A placed InDesign file is listed in the Links panel as any other art file. File names indented below the InDesign file indicate artwork linked to that file.*

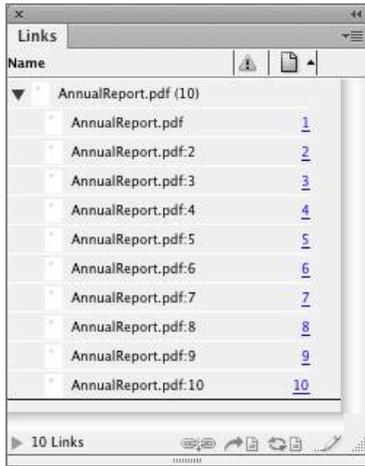
While Type > Find Font will allow you to substitute fonts in the main "parent" InDesign file, you'll have to open any placed InDesign files to perform font substitution in those files, and then update. To open a placed InDesign file, select the name of the file in the Links panel and click the Edit Original icon (small pencil) at the bottom of the panel.

If you edit graphics contained in the placed InDesign files, you'll need to update their links in the placed files, and then update the placed files themselves in the parent file.

### PDFs as artwork

In much the same way as you've traditionally used EPS files as artwork, you can use PDFs (including multi-page files) as artwork. If the PDFs

were correctly created, there are no worries about missing support files or font embedding (provided that all fonts used to create the PDF will allow embedding). Any change to the original PDF file (such as regenerating the file, deleting or rearranging pages) will impact the appearance of the InDesign file.



### PDFs as Placed Art

The Links panel shows which pages of a multipage placed PDF are used, indicated by the number after the colon. Note that page 1 does not have a number after it.

For best results, PDF files intended for placement as art in an InDesign file should be saved as Acrobat 5.0-compatible or later to avoid premature flattening of transparency. If the originating application has used fonts that forbid embedding, the PDFs will yield a “missing fonts” alert during Preflight, as well as marking those fonts as missing if you use Find Font. A file using such PDFs as artwork won’t image correctly unless the necessary fonts are supplied, active, and available to the imaging device.

## TEXT FEATURES

InDesign contains some advanced features for generating text components. Text components such as Cross-References, Conditional Text, paragraph-based bullets and numbering, Live Captions, and

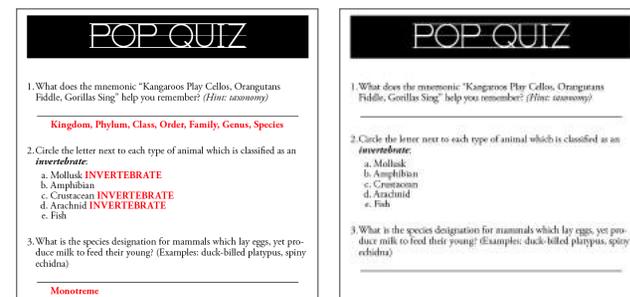
Variables are generated as the result of special functions in InDesign and, as such, require some special handling when editing.

## Cross-References

Helpful in long documents such as user manuals or technical publications, cross-references refers readers from one part of the document to another. If a document is extensively edited, causing text reflow, cross-reference text may change as page numbers are updated. To change the specifications for a cross-reference, use the options in the Cross-Reference panel (Window > Type & Tables > Cross-References). You can customize your Preflight profile to warn you if Cross-references are out of date and require updating.

## Conditional Text

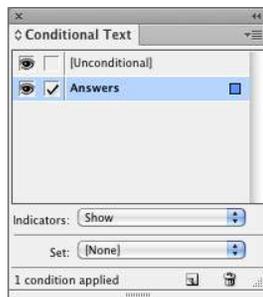
Conditional text is text whose display is governed by conditions — hence the name. For example, a textbook might contain quiz questions along with answers to the questions. The instructor’s copy would display the quiz answers; the students’ copies would not. Using conditional text, both versions of the textbook can be sourced from the same document. While multiple layers are one solution to this requirement, conditional text offers the advantage that the optional text can be inline with other text; this can make it easier to align common and conditional text. Note that if conditional text is turned off within a story, text reflow may occur. Advise your customers to notify you if they have used the Conditional text feature, and suggest that they provide you with hard copy or PDFs for each case of Conditional text so you can check for correct output.



## Showing and Hiding Conditional Text

Conditional text can be visible for one version of output (left) and hidden for another version (right). Note that when inline conditional text is hidden, remaining text may reflow.

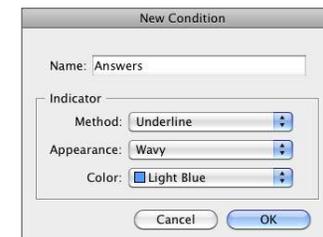
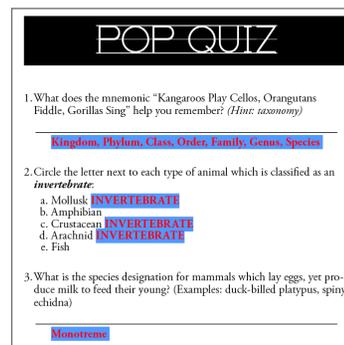
Any text — a paragraph, a word, even a single letter — can be tagged with one or more conditions. You must be careful to set the visibility of the conditional text itself correctly; if the conditional text is visible, it will print. To control the visibility of conditional text, use the “eye” icon in the Conditional Text panel (Window > Type & Tables > Conditional Text).



## Assigning Conditional Text

Selected text can be assigned to one or more conditions. A check by the condition name means that currently selected text is tagged with that condition. The eye icon controls the visibility of the conditional text. If conditional text is visible, it will print.

To easily identify text belonging to each condition, color indicators such as highlights and several types of underscores can be selected. You can choose whether to show or hide conditional text indicators, and you have options to show but not print the indicators, or to show and print the indicators. In most circumstances, you would wish to avoid printing conditional text indicators, except possibly for proofreading and identification purposes on proof output. To control the visibility and printability of conditional text indicators, use the options in the Indicators pop-up menu in the Conditional Text panel.



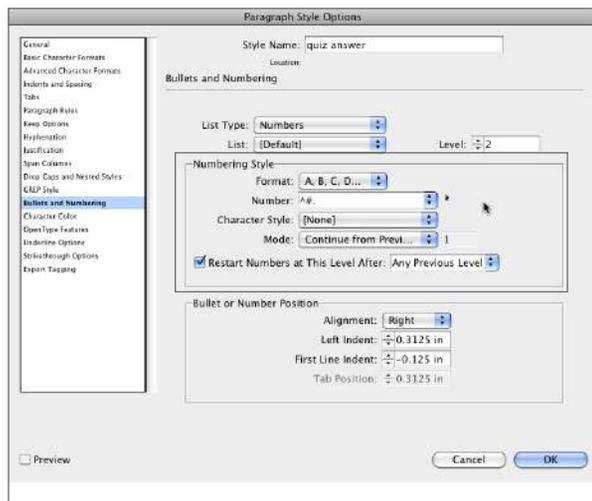
## Conditional Text Indicators

Indicators such as colored wavy underlines or highlights identify conditional text. You can choose whether these indicators are visible or hidden, and whether they print.

Don't confuse the visibility and print options for the conditional text indicators with the visibility (and thus the printability) of the conditional text itself.

## Paragraph-based Numbering

Numbering and bulleted features are paragraph attributes, and can be controlled by paragraph styles. If you need to change the formatting for a numbered list (for example, to change all numbers to another color), you will find that you cannot select the numbers themselves as you would select other text. Because the numbers are generated by the paragraph style, you must change them by using the Paragraph Styles Option dialog box. To control the formatting and color of numbers and bullets in such situations, you will need to invoke a character style that applies the desired formatting. For details on formatting numbered text, see InDesign Help.



## Numbering Styles

If you can't select a number or letter in a list, it's being generated by a paragraph style that uses InDesign's auto-numbering feature. To change the attributes of the numbers (or letters), open the Paragraph Style Options for the style (double-click the style name in the Paragraph Styles panel). Change the options to alter the appearance of the numbers or letters. Here, the multiple-choice letters to the answers in the quiz have been changed from lower-case to upper-case letters.

## Variables

A Text Variable generates text based on rules: In a Running Header, for example, text is generated based on rules set up in the Variable definition. To edit the text generated by the variable, either edit the definition (Type > Text Variable > Define, and select the variable), or convert the variable text to plain text (Type > Text Variables > Convert Variable to Text) and edit the converted text. Note that plain text will no longer be changed if the variable definition is edited. There are nine types of variables:

- **Chapter Number:** Usually inserted into individual documents that are part of a Book file. When the Book file is synchronized, each chapter is given the correct number, based on its position in the book.
- **Creation Date:** Based on the original creation date of the file.
- **File Name:** Inserts the document's file name.

- **Last Page Number:** Inserts the total number of pages, and updates if pages are added to or deleted from the file.
- **Modification Date:** Inserts the most recent modification date of the document, including the date and time of day. The date is updated each time the document is saved.
- **Output Date:** Inserts the most recent print or export date of the document.
- **Running Header (Character Style):** Inserts text derived from the first or last instance of text using a specified character style on the page. Think of telephone books which show the first and last names at the top of each page.
- **Running Header (Paragraph Style):** Inserts text derived from the first or last instance of text using a specified paragraph style on the page.
- **Custom Text:** Available only when you select New in the Text Variables dialog, the Custom variable lets you assign any text to a "placeholder" variable. This can be useful for text or terminology that may change (such as a new product name).

Note that text generated by a variable will not break or hyphenate. If you are required to make text edits in which variable text forces unwanted line breaks or text reflow, you may have to convert the variable text to plain text to accomplish desired text flow.

## ROTATED SPREAD VIEWING

InDesign CS6 includes the ability to rotate the working view of a spread by 90 degree increments. The pages of the spread are viewed at the rotated angle, and can be worked on at that angle; text frames created while the spread is viewed in rotation take on the rotation of the spread. This can make it much easier to work on projects such as greeting cards and calendars. Note that spread rotation is only an altered view for convenience in working on rotated content; the pages do not actually change the document's setup. Pages print and export in their original

orientation. Note that a single page within a spread cannot be rotated separately from the other pages in the spread.



### Rotate Spread View

To facilitate working on layouts such as calendars, you can rotate the on screen view by 90 degree increments. Tools work in rotated fashion, as well. The file prints and exports in its original orientation, however. The rotation icon next to a spread in the Pages panel indicates that it has been rotated.

To rotate a spread, choose a page or spread, select Rotate Spread View from the Pages panel menu, and choose a rotation value (90 degrees clockwise, 90 degrees counter-clockwise, or 180 degrees). To clear the rotation, choose Rotate Spread View from the Pages panel menu, and select the Clear Rotation option.

## USING THE INDESIGN FORENSIC TOOLS

In addition to its new Live Preflight function, InDesign offers a number of methods for examining documents and content for problems. Use these methods to catch extraneous spot colors, non-printing objects, and transparency issues.

### Preflighting the document

The Preflight function has been greatly expanded in InDesign CS6. You can create and share customized preflight profiles, and even embed a profile in a document. Preflight is now also a dynamic process, providing constant feedback in the status bar concerning the document's current state according to the preflight profile in use — hence, the term Live Preflight. Consequently, problems can be spotted

immediately, rather than waiting for preflight to be performed just before a job is submitted.



### Preflight Status Report

The document status bar at the lower left of the InDesign document window displays a constantly-updated indicator of current Preflight status. A green light indicates that document content meets the current preflight profile's specifications. A red light and number of errors indicates that the current preflight profile has found problems in the document.

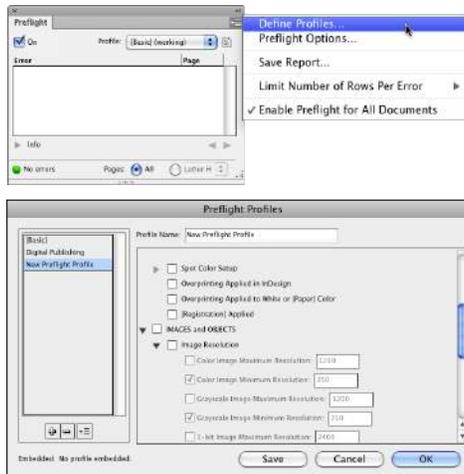
To view preflight results, click on the triangle at the right side of the preflight module in the status bar (at the lower left corner of the document window), and choose Preflight Panel from the pop-up menu that appears, double-click the error status text in the status bar, or choose Window > Output > Preflight Panel. Any errors are displayed; click on each entry to see a description of the flagged problem, as well as a proposed fix for the problem. You can also double-click on the item in the Preflight panel list to go to the problem object in the document.



### Preflight Reporting

Based on a custom preflight profile, InDesign displays an error message for each violation. The problem is described, and a possible fix is proposed. You can save the preflight error report as a text file or PDF. By default, preflighting is turned on, and uses a basic working preflight profile; this option gives you an alert in the status bar showing the number of current preflight problems (or a green light if there are no problems).

To create a custom preflight profile, choose Window > Output > Preflight. The Preflight panel is displayed; choose Define Profiles from the panel menu.



### Preflight Profiles

*Live Preflight is extensive in InDesign CS6. Define profiles that fit your workflow and print conditions by setting options for each aspect of the document. You can export and import custom preflight profiles, and can even embed a profile in a document. Consider creating multiple Preflight profiles for your most common printing conditions so you can load the appropriate profile and check documents for output workflows.*

## PREFLIGHT PROFILE OPTIONS

You can set up very granular controls as part of a custom preflight profile. To activate a control, click the checkbox by the control (such as Links or Color), then click the disclosure triangle next to the control name to change settings. The controls include:

### General

- Enter a description of the profile's settings or purpose.

### Links

- Links Missing or Modified
- **OPI Links:** check this option to be warned of graphics that contain OPI instructions.

### Color

- **Transparency Blending Space Required:** Choose RGB or CMYK.
- **Cyan, Magenta, Yellow plates not allowed:** check this for a job that should have only black and/or spot plates.

- **Color Spaces and Modes Not Allowed:** choose from RGB, CMYK, Spot Color, Gray, and Lab
- **Spot Color Setup:** Choose a maximum number of allowable spot colors, and whether to use Lab values or CMYK equivalent values to represent the spot colors on screen.
- **Overprinting Applied in InDesign:** Check for any content set to Overprint by InDesign.
- **Overprint Applied to White or [Paper] color:** Check for overprinting white objects, which will not image (also checks for overprinting white in placed art).
- **Registration Applied:** Check for any text or objects using Registration color.

## Images and Objects

- **Image Resolution:** Check for minimum/maximum resolution for color, grayscale and 1-bit images.
- **Non-proportional scaling:** Check for distorted graphics.
- **Uses transparency:** Check for graphics and other objects using transparency (opacity or blending mode).
- **Image ICC profile:** Check for embedded profiles that may cause CMYK conversion; exclude any images with no embedded profiles.
- **Layer Visibility Overrides:** Check for any layer visibility overrides to placed Photoshop, Illustrator or PDF files.
- **Minimum Stroke Weight:** Set a minimum stroke weight value. You can also limit the check to reverse strokes or strokes printing in multiple colors.
- **Interactive elements:** Check for buttons, sounds, and movies. However, hyperlinks are not reported.
- **Bleed/Trim hazards:** Check for objects too close to the designated live area. You can specify separate insets for top, bottom, left/inside, and right/outside. Also check for objects too close to the spine.

## Text

- **Overset:** Display number of frames with overset text. Select each entry in the preflight panel to see how many characters are overset in each instance.
- **Paragraph Style and Character Style Overrides:** You can choose to ignore font style, kerning/tracking, language, and color overrides.
- **Font Missing:** Identify if a needed font is not available on the system.
- **Glyph Missing:** Identify if a glyph is not available in the font used by the text (this could occur if a glyph was used, but then the font applied to the text was changed to another font which does not contain the glyph).
- **Dynamic Spelling Detects Errors:** Checks for occurrences of words flagged by Dynamic Spelling. However, you must search for the telltale red zig-zag underline indicating misspelled words (Dynamic Spelling must be enabled).
- **Font Types Not Allowed:** Check for protected fonts (which cannot be embedded in PDFs), bitmap, TrueType, ATC (Adobe Type Composer) fonts, and several different Type 1 and OpenType formats.
- **Non-proportional Type Scaling**
- **Minimum Type Size:** Set a minimum type size. You can also limit the error reporting to white or multicolor text.
- **Cross-References:** Check for out-of-date or unresolved cross-references.
- **Conditional Text Indicators Will Print:** Check for Conditional Text whose indicators are set to print.

## Document

- **Page Size and Orientation:** Check for document page dimensions (ignoring orientation prevents flagging of document based on portrait/landscape orientation).

- **Number of Pages Required:** Set options for minimum/maximum number of pages, as well as exact number of pages, and multiples of a specified number.
- **Blank Pages:** Specify whether pages are considered blank if they contain only master items (and no other document page content), or if they contain only non-printing items.
- **Bleed and Slug Setup:** Set a minimum/maximum or exact value for bleed amount and slug area size.

To modify an existing preflight profile, select it in the Profile pop-up menu in the Preflight panel, and then choose Define Profiles from the panel menu. Click OK when you're finished. Choose Preflight Options from the Preflight panel menu to choose whether to embed the working profile into new files, whether to use the embedded profile or your working profile when opening new documents, whether to include hidden and non-printing layers, and whether to check objects in the pasteboard and objects set to be non-printing.

There are some font issues that Preflight does not catch: Fonts required by any PSD files with text layers are not indicated in the list. These fonts will not be checked for by preflight, nor will they be included when the file is packaged, so the customer will have to manually collect them for job submission. Suggest that Photoshop files containing text be saved as Photoshop PDF, which embeds fonts and makes packaging fonts unnecessary. In addition, text in a Photoshop PDF will print as sharp, vector edges, whereas text in a Photoshop PSD will be rasterized during print.

InDesign CS6 also includes a Digital Publishing Preflight profile, which initially only checks for inaccessible URLs, missing support art and fonts, and overset text. The profile can be modified to add more parameters.

## FINDING PROBLEMS: ADDITIONAL FORENSIC TOOLS

Whether you use InDesign's Live Preflight function or dedicated preflight software, or rely on experienced prepress operators to carefully examine incoming files, it's important to recognize problem files early in the production process, in the interest of saving time, money, and sanity. For a thorough analysis, use all the forensic tools available to you—Separations Preview, Overprint Preview, Flattener Preview, and the Info panel—in addition to the Preflight function.

### Separations Preview

Use the Separations Preview panel (Window > Output > Separations Preview) to evaluate on screen how a document will color-separate on printed output. You can view individual spot and process color plates or any combination of plates. Choose an option from the Separations panel menu to view plates in their actual ink color, or as black. You can also highlight overprinting objects and areas that exceed a specified total ink limit, by choosing Ink Limit from the Separations Preview panel's View pop-up menu. If you need to make adjustments, for immediate feedback you can edit while Separations Preview is in effect.

Adobe InDesign can preview separations by displaying any combination of the inks defined in the document, such as the cyan plate and the magenta plate. The results display using high-resolution screen display engine in InDesign to more realistically represent conditions such as overprinting, RGB-to-CMYK conversion, and spot color interactions with transparency. Trapping, however, is not simulated. The ability to display overprints and ink limits for any combination of plates can make the Separations Preview capability more useful for evaluation than a laser-printed separations proof. Separations Preview is calculated using the ink characteristics for process and spot inks.

On an offset press, black ink is not 100% opaque. For a more accurate simulation of black opacity, enable and properly configure color management and choose to display blacks accurately (choose Preferences > Appearance of Black, and choose Display All Blacks Accurately for on screen display), or, if you have disabled color

management (not recommended), you can choose the Desaturate Black command from the Separations Preview panel menu. Desaturate Black reduces the visual opacity of the black plate only (this does not affect output). Desaturate Black is redundant (and will provide an anemic display of black objects) when color management is on and accurate blacks are displayed.

Keep the following tips in mind as you use the Separations Preview panel:

- CMYK plates are always listed, even if, for example, the job uses only two spot colors. However, CMYK plates are not output if no colors need to be printed on them.
- The Separations Preview panel lists all inks defined in a document, whether or not they are actually used in the document. Consequently, it is recommended that you delete unused spot-color swatches before viewing separations.
- You can view the effect of converting spot colors to process and the effect of aliasing a spot ink (see the previous "Using the Ink Manager" in this section). Both of these options are available in the Ink Manager on the Separations Preview panel menu.
- You can't preview the overprinting effects of built-in trapping or Adobe In-RIP Trapping. Separations Preview displays only the effects of overprints applied manually through the Attributes panel.

You can use the Ink Limit feature in the Separations Preview panel to see if any areas of the document exceed a specified limit—for example, 320% for sheetfed printing. The total ink limit depends on the press being used to run the job, the type of stock, and other factors. If only a few small areas are highlighted in this preview, it should be no cause for alarm. But if large areas exceed the desired total ink limit, you may have to edit graphics and other content to ensure that their total ink value falls within the limit to prevent printing problems.

In the Separations Preview panel, choose Ink Limit from the View pop-up menu, and enter an ink limit value. Areas in gray are within the

total ink limit. Areas shown in red are over your ink limit; more intense reds indicate greater degrees of ink-limit excess. The percentages along the right side of the panel indicate the ink amounts at the location of the pointer.

To view the ink percentage at any point on the layout:

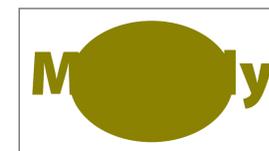
1. Position the mouse where you want to evaluate the ink percentages.
2. Refer to the percentages along the right side of the Separations Preview panel. Ink values for each plate are displayed, along with the total for CMYK plates.

When viewing separations, the total CMYK ink value is displayed, but not the total combined ink value for overlapping process and spot colors. Position the cursor over areas of overlapping process and spot colors, and add the CMYK total value to the values displayed for spot colors. To highlight areas exceeding a total ink coverage limit, choose Ink Limit from the Separations Preview panel pull-down menu. Set the Ink Limit value for your press condition; areas exceeding the limit are highlighted in red.

## Overprint Preview

Overprint Preview (View > Overprint Preview) simulates how objects set to overprint will appear in color-separated output (or composite output when the Simulate Overprint option is enabled). When Overprint Preview is on, you can see underlying objects through overprinted objects as they would appear on press.

Overprint Preview also gives a more realistic view of spot colors involved with certain blending modes. In the normal, composite view, interactions between spot color objects may be misleading, so make it a habit to check files by turning on Overprint Preview. Because turning on Overprint Preview also turns on High Quality Display, you may experience a slight slowing of performance in InDesign as a result. Consequently, you may wish to turn on Overprint Preview to check content, and then turn it off once you have finished.



### Using Overprint Preview

*The text and oval both have a fill of solid PMS 399, and the text is set to Multiply. The composite view (left) is misleading: after all, you can't have 200% of a single ink. Turn on Overprint Preview, however (right) and you'll see how this effect will actually print.*

### Flattener Preview

To display the Flattener Preview panel choose Window > Output > Flattener Preview. To evaluate the effects of flattening, select an option from the Highlight pop-up menu in the Flattener Preview panel:

- **Rasterized Complex Regions:** Highlights areas that are rasterized based on the settings in the transparency flattener preset. When the Raster/Vector Balance slider is set to 100, no areas are highlighted because rasterization only occurs within the outlines of each text or line-art object that's affected.
- **Transparent Objects:** Highlights objects that use transparency. It doesn't indicate any of the possible results of flattening.
- **All Affected Objects:** Highlights both objects that use transparency and objects that must be flattened because they interact with the objects that use transparency. This setting does not indicate flattening results, but it's useful because it indicates all objects that could potentially be flattened.
- **Affected Graphics:** Highlights images that will be flattened, but not effects or non-image objects (such as vector drawings). This setting is especially useful for OPI workflows, because the highlighted images are the ones that must be swapped with high-resolution versions at output time in order to flatten properly. If an image isn't highlighted, you don't need to be concerned about flattening it in an OPI workflow. You can use this setting together with the Info panel to verify the resolution of any highlighted images.

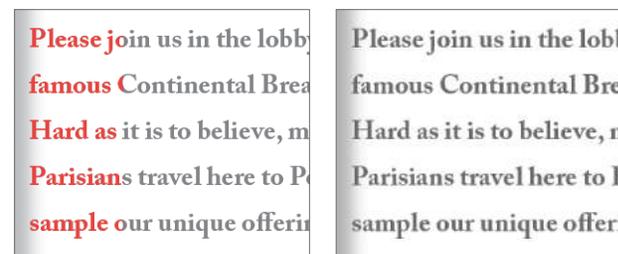
- **Outlined Strokes:** Highlights which strokes will be slightly thicker when flattened. Sometimes strokes are converted into filled areas of the same width to recreate a transparent effect when flattened. These areas may appear thicker because some RIPs process strokes differently than filled shapes, but the effect is usually not visible on device resolutions above 1200 dpi. If you are printing on a device below 1200 dpi and this feature highlights many objects on a page, you can make all strokes appear consistent by applying a preset where Convert All Strokes To Outlines is turned on.
- **Outlined Text:** Highlights which type characters will be converted to outlines under the currently applied transparency flattener preset. Characters become slightly thicker when converted to outlines, but the effect may not be visible on device resolutions above 1200 dpi. If you are printing on a device below 1200 dpi and this feature highlights many characters on a page, you can make all text appear consistent by applying a preset where Convert All Text To Outlines is turned on.
- **Raster-fill Text and Strokes:** Highlights text or strokes that may be affected by RIPs that record continuous-tone (CT) objects at a different resolution than linework (LW) objects. Affected objects are likely to use transparency effects that create images, such as drop shadows or feathered edges. You don't need to use this option if you don't have this type of RIP, or if you have this type of RIP and its version has no issues producing output of text or strokes with drop shadows and feathers.
- **All Rasterized Regions:** Highlights all areas that will be rasterized because of the current flattener preset—not just complex regions. This option involves rasterization of fills, not outlines, and the rasterized fills are clipped to the original smooth outlines. Again, this view is useful if you output to a RIP that processes CT and LW objects differently because it indicates which parts will appear on the CT page as a result of flattening. It also highlights objects that will be rasterized when the Raster/Vector Balance uses a value less than 100. If many areas are highlighted, you may want to consider using transparency

flattener settings with the Raster/Vector Balance set to 100, or increase the Line Art and Text Resolution if you set Raster/Vector Balance to less than 100. Note that it is extremely rare for text or vector content to be rasterized in InDesign CS6, unless you have chosen a very low value for the Raster/Vector Balance control.

To minimize the chance that text will be outlined, stack the text above all other objects; for example, move it in front of other objects using Object > Arrange > Bring to Front. If this can be done without changing the look of the design, it will prevent the text characters from being flattened by getting them out from under the transparency objects.

Select a flattener preset from the Preset pop-up menu. If Auto Refresh Highlight is off, click Refresh to see the effect of the preset you selected. To control preview refresh, do one of the following:

- Click the Refresh button after changing the Highlight or Preset settings.
- Select Auto Refresh Highlight to let InDesign refresh the display after you change Highlight or Preset settings.



#### Flattener Preview

*The text on the left is affected by the drop shadow because it is below the drop shadow. The text on the right isn't affected by transparency because it is now above the drop shadow in stacking order.*

#### Photoshop blending mode issue

Within Photoshop, a shadow set to Multiply blend mode will darken what's underneath it. But when you place a Photoshop file into InDesign, the shadow knocks out what's underneath, lightening the area rather than darkening it. To see the effect, place a Photoshop image containing a shadow into InDesign, and then use Separations

Preview (Window > Output > Separations Preview). Turn off the black separation, and you'll see that the shadow knocks out anything behind it. While this wouldn't matter if the shadow fell on an empty area of the page, the knockout effect will be obvious when it falls over other page content.



### Photoshop Blending Modes in InDesign

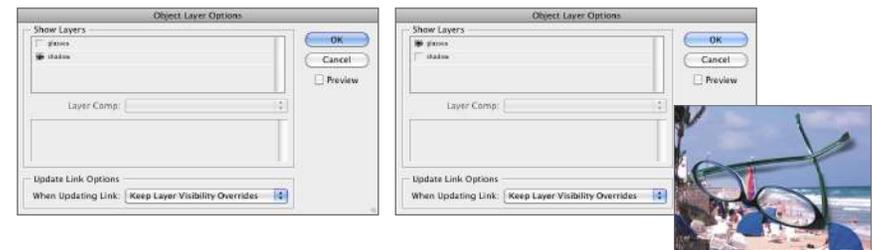
A Photoshop shadow looks satisfactory in composite view, but turning off the black plate in the Separations Preview panel reveals a problem: rather than darkening everything, the shadow knocks out everything underneath.

While InDesign honors opacity attributes of native, layered Photoshop files, it does not handle all Photoshop blending modes. InDesign handles its own shadows correctly, darkening content underneath. Blending modes from Illustrator (including Illustrator-created shadows and other effects) image correctly as well.

If the image is silhouetted and just requires a drop shadow (a concentric shadow, offset from the image), eliminate the drop shadow in Photoshop, and replicate it in InDesign. If, however, the designer has created a cast shadow (for example, a shadow that would be cast by a vase on the table under it), you must take special measures to ensure that the shadow will image correctly.

If the shadow has been created on a separate layer from the object, the Photoshop file can be correctly imaged from InDesign, after a minor change (described in the following steps). If the shadow is on the same layer as the object, it must be copied onto another layer, and deleted from the object's layer. The object and its shadow must be on separate layers in Photoshop to be able to use this workaround:

1. Place the image in InDesign; then copy its frame to the clipboard. Choose Object > Object Layer Options, and turn off the top layer, leaving only the shadow layer visible. Select the shadow frame, and set it to Multiply blend mode in the Transparency panel. You'll see immediately that the shadow looks more natural, darkening underlying objects.
2. Choose Edit > Paste in Place to paste the copied image. Use Object Layer Options again, this time to turn off the shadow layer and leave only the top layer. Check the results with Separations Preview: you'll see that the shadow no longer knocks out.



### Solving the Shadow Problem

Place the image twice, for separate handling of the shadow and the object. Use Object Layer Options (left) to control the visibility of layers, and set the shadow's frame to Multiply. The result: a shadow that images correctly (right).

Keep in mind that the limitations (and solution) apply to anything in a Photoshop file that uses any blending mode (not just shadows, and not just the Multiply blend mode).

### Screen Mode

To see different representations of a document, choose View > Screen Mode and select from the Screen Mode menu to toggle among four Screen options (you can also use the last tool at the bottom of the toolbox to select these modes):

- **Normal:** Page and pasteboard are visible, and guides, margin indicators and hidden characters (such as paragraph markers) may also be shown, depending on the user's preferences.

- **Preview:** Guides, margin indicators, and hidden characters are not displayed. The pasteboard area changes to gray (unless the user has selected another color in preferences), and only the trim area of the page is shown. Any non-printing objects are also invisible. Preview is also useful for quickly noticing any artwork too close to trim. Quickly toggle between Normal and Preview modes by pressing the W key on the keyboard (provided you are not currently in a text frame).
- **Bleed:** Appearance is the same as for basic Preview mode, except that the bleed area is also displayed, if a bleed zone has been set up. This can make it easier to visually determine if the document has adequate bleed. To set up a bleed zone if the document does not have one, choose File > Document Setup, and enter the appropriate value in the Bleed amount fields. Click the More Options button in the Document Setup dialog if necessary to display the Bleed amount fields.
- **Slug:** The trim area of the page is displayed, along with the designated slug area.

## COLOR MANAGEMENT ISSUES

Color management is enabled by default throughout Adobe Creative Suite 5. Under most circumstances, the most flexible prepress workflow is to have color management on, because the color settings are designed for a safe CMYK workflow. Turning color management off also disables profile and policy warnings, which increases the chance of misinterpreted colors as graphics are moved among applications, particularly for RGB objects from color-managed applications.

### Handling alerts about missing or mismatched color profiles

If you frequently encounter alerts indicating missing or mismatched profiles, provide customers with the color settings in use at your shop and have them use Adobe Bridge to synchronize them across their workgroup. Some color settings files, such as the North American General Purpose 2, are configured to preserve CMYK numbers and convert RGB without displaying mismatch warnings. If you use such a color settings file you will rarely encounter the warnings described

below. Other color settings, such as North American Prepress 2, are set to display warnings so that you can monitor workflow status more closely. If you do see the following alerts, it is safer from a prepress point of view to make choices that preserve RGB profiles and preserve color numbers of CMYK objects. When you open a file that displays a mismatch alert, you may encounter it twice: once for the InDesign RGB working space and once for the InDesign CMYK working space.

The Profile or Policy Mismatch dialog box appears when a document opens on a computer that uses different color settings than those used to create the document.

There are two possible types of mismatches: profile mismatches and policy mismatches. A profile mismatch simply means that the RGB or CMYK working space of the user who saved the document is different than the working space of the user who is opening the document. A policy mismatch is a difference in how each user resolves a profile mismatch. For example, one user might preserve color numbers (by ignoring embedded profiles), while another user might preserve color appearance (by applying embedded profiles). Preserving color numbers is typically correct for CMYK, but preserving profiles is typically correct for RGB graphics with embedded profiles.

When you see a mismatch alert message, you can take one of these actions:

- **Reconcile the root cause of the alert message:** Click Cancel and determine why the customer is using color settings that don't match yours. Then you can open the document and make one of the choices in the alert message. If practical, have the customer and your shop use the same color settings so that mismatches don't happen in the future.
- **Assume the document's colors were correct in the customer's environment:** For an RGB mismatch, if the document's policy was Preserve and the customer's placed RGB graphics include embedded profiles, you can select Leave the Document As Is. There is usually no need to change the RGB (working space) Profile.

- For a CMYK mismatch, you may need to change the CMYK (working space) profile to your shop's standard. If the document's policy was Preserve Numbers and the customer's placed CMYK images do not include embedded profiles, you can select Leave the Document As Is. If the document's CMYK policy was Preserve, you may want to consult with the customer to confirm that they intended to use the Preserve policy, because it is not CMYK-safe. If the document contains CMYK objects with embedded profiles, the Preserve policy keeps them, which may result in CMYK color conversions at output time. If that was not what the customer intended, simply choose Ignore Embedded Profiles to open the document in a safe CMYK mode.
- **Defer the decision until later:** Select Leave The Document As Is, but at a later time be sure to choose Edit > Assign Profiles to verify that the profile assignments for both RGB and CMYK are appropriate, and then, if necessary, change the profiles.

If there was a policy mismatch, saving the document on your computer applies your current color settings policy to the document.

You can change the profile assignment of an individual image. For example, if you know that a placed image was saved with the wrong profile, you can either assign the correct profile or simply ignore it if the correct profile would match the document's working space.

Note: You can change the profile assignment of bitmap images only, such as Photoshop or TIFF files. You can't change the profile assignments of EPS or PDF files.

To change the profile assignment of an individual image:

1. With the Direct Selection tool (white arrow), select an image.
2. Choose Object > Image Color Settings.
3. Assign the correct profile, and click OK. Assigning a profile to one graphic doesn't affect any other graphics and doesn't change the working space of the InDesign CS6 document.

At any time you can use the Info panel to identify the color profile of a selected image.

See the "Common Resources" chapter for more information about color management in Creative Suite 5.

## WORKING WITH A BOOK FILE

Adobe InDesign CS6 can organize and manage sets of InDesign files in a book file—a binder that governs a collection of documents—to dynamically share attributes and formats. For example, a reference book with 10 chapters can be created as 10 InDesign files that exist separately, but are managed by the book file for pagination, indexing, and other operations. If a customer has used a book file, it's best to manage prepress operations such as preflighting across all documents in a book. This requires using the Book panel, which displays a book's individual InDesign documents as a list.

To open a book, choose File > Open and select the book file. Book files use the .indb file extension. (If you don't see any file extensions, you may need to turn on a setting in your operating system that makes file extensions visible). A book file appears as a panel. The Book panel command doesn't appear in the Window menu until a book file has been opened. If more than one book is open, you'll see multiple Book panels. A Book panel's name is the name of its book file.

To find commands that affect files in a book, look on the Book panel menu. For example, to preflight a book, you choose Preflight Book from the Book panel menu. If you choose File > Preflight, you'll preflight the active open document only, regardless of the documents selected in the Book panel. Similarly, the File menu commands to print or export a PDF file affect the active open document only, not books; to print or export books you must choose Print or Export commands from the Book panel menu. The exact name of the commands can change according to whether or not documents are selected in the Book panel.

Always preflight a book before creating output from it. Alert messages, such as those about missing fonts and graphics, don't appear when you open a book file—only when you open an individual document that is governed by a book file.

Note which documents are selected in the book file. Some commands in the Book panel menu, such as the Preflight Book, Export Book To PDF, and Print Book commands, operate on the selected documents only. To preflight, export, or print the entire book, make sure that either no documents are selected or all documents are selected in the Book panel. When documents are selected in the Book panel, the Preflight Book, Export Book To PDF, and Print Book commands appear as the Preflight Selected Documents, Export Selected Documents to PDF, and Print Selected Documents commands, respectively.

It's possible to create a book where the page size and orientation varies with each document in the book. You may want to verify the page orientations of your book files before setting up output media by double-clicking each file in the Book panel to open and check them.

### **Synchronizing, paginating, and preflighting a book file**

A modified icon (  ) appears when an individual document in a book has changed since the last time the book was saved. When a document in a book has been modified, it's no longer certain that the book's pagination is correct because pages may have been added to or deleted from the modified document. For this reason, the only way to resolve a modified icon is to repaginate the book, so that InDesign can determine whether pages were added or deleted from the modified document and update the book accordingly.

Before you repaginate a particular book for the first time, preflight all the constituent documents in the book first to ensure that all necessary fonts are present. Select all the document names in the Book panel, and choose Preflight Book from the panel menu. If fonts are missing, text may recompose during repagination, causing line breaks to change. Repaginate only after consulting with the customer, because it may alter

the content (such as page numbering) of documents in the book. To repaginate a book, choose Repaginate from the Book panel menu.

A book's formatting is controlled by a style source document that controls all other documents in the book. Any document in a book can be a style source document which is indicated by a small icon (  ) to the left of its name in the Book panel. Any InDesign document can belong to multiple book files. For this reason, when customers use a book file, they should identify the style source document; before you synchronize the book, confirm that the correct document is earmarked as the source document in the Book panel. Because a book can contain complex links, cross references, and other dependencies, it is best to have customers synchronize, preflight, package, and proof book files to resolve outstanding book-level issues before the files are handed off.

When you synchronize a book file, the following attributes are governed (and may be changed as a result): table of contents styles, character styles, paragraph styles, object styles, table and cell styles, trap styles, swatches, numbered lists, variables, page numbering, and chapter numbering. Synchronizing a book file won't resolve color management profile inconsistencies among book documents. To anticipate color management error messages before high-resolution output, export to PDF as a test; profile conflict alert messages appear when the book is printed or exported. If you encounter a color profile conflict error message, determine the correct settings (which may require a discussion with the customer) and change the color settings in documents as needed. Remember that you can quickly do this by saving the correct settings to a transportable .csf file (in the Edit > Color Settings dialog box) and then loading them into other documents.

To synchronize an entire book file:

1. Open the book file. While it's not required that you open all of the files in the book, note that the Edit > Undo command can undo synchronization changes only to files that are open.
2. Make sure the correct style source document is specified.

3. Shift-click to select all the files in the book, or click in an empty area below the list of documents to deselect all documents.
4. From the Book panel menu, choose Synchronize Options. Make sure all of the options you want to synchronize are on, and then click OK.
5. From the Book panel menu, choose Synchronize Book.
6. When an alert appears indicating that the synchronization is successful, click OK.

## CREATING PDF FILES FROM INDESIGN

InDesign offers two distinct PDF export options — Print and Interactive. Be sure to choose the “Adobe PDF (Print)” option when exporting for print, as PDF files created with the Interactive settings present difficulties such as solid RGB text instead of black-only text.

If you accept PDF files from customers, it’s likely that you have specific PDF presets that are appropriate for your workflow. Be sure to share those presets with customers; remember that PDF creation presets (also called joboptions in Distiller) are shared across Creative Suite 5. See the “Common Resources” chapter for more detailed information on PDF creation. This topic concerns InDesign-specific settings.

Generally speaking, your first decision is between creating a PDF with live transparency (compatible with Acrobat 5.0 and above) or a PDF with flattened transparency (compatible with Acrobat 4.0 and earlier). If your workflow supports live transparency (for example, if your RIP implements the Adobe PDF Print Engine), it’s preferable to keep transparency live throughout the job’s life cycle. Keeping transparency live means using native files as support art when creating PDFs containing live transparency and not prematurely flattening transparency. If your workflow handles PDF files, but contains any processes (including imposition, trapping, and RIPping) that do not support live transparency, you may achieve more predictable results by generating Acrobat 4.0-compatible PDFs. Contact the vendors of RIPs,

imposition software, and other workflow components to discover if newer versions are available that will allow you to process PDFs containing unflattened transparency. Depending on your workflow, start with one of the presets and modify as necessary:

- **PDF/X-1a:2001**—Based on PDF 1.3 (Acrobat 4.0), and intended for use in workflows that do not employ color management or support live transparency. All transparency is flattened; spot colors are maintained; any RGB content is converted to CMYK during PDF generation.
- **PDF/X-3:2002**—Based on PDF 1.3 (Acrobat 4.0), and intended for use in workflows that require flattened transparency, but have support for color management. Transparency is flattened; no color conversion takes place.
- **PDF/X-4:2008**—Based on PDF 1.4 (Acrobat 5.0). Supports color management and maintains live transparency; no flattening or color conversion takes place. This is ideal for RIPs based on the Adobe PDF Print Engine technology. Note that when you choose the PDF/X-4:2008 preset, the Standard pull-down menu displays PDF/X-4:2010 (introduced in InDesign CS5.5; see below), which reflects the fact that this preset was updated to the newer spec. This change should not cause any problems with any workflows based on the original PDF/X-2:2008 specification.
- **PDF/X-4:2010**—This specification is based on PDF/X-4:2008, but with the Compatibility option updated to PDF 1.6 (allowing layers in the exported PDF), and the addition of the JPEG2000 compression option for color and grayscale images.

There’s at least one important modification you should make to the PDF preset you use as a starting point in InDesign: by default, InDesign does not include bleed or marks in its default presets. Consider creating a custom PDF preset that includes bleed, and share it with your customers:

1. Choose File > Adobe PDF Presets > Define.
2. Choose the appropriate preset for a starting point.

3. Click the New button, and name the preset.
4. To modify the bleed settings, choose Marks and Bleeds, and set the appropriate bleed amount for your workflow. It is not sufficient to check the option to Use Document Bleed Settings. If a document has been set up with zero bleed, the resulting PDF will be without bleed. Rather, set the bleed amount to an appropriate number (usually 0.125 in).
5. Choose any printer's marks you wish to add.
6. Click OK to save the PDF preset
7. To save the PDF preset as a file for another workstation or a customer, choose File > Adobe PDF Presets > Define, select the preset in the list, and click the Save As button. Give the preset a brief name (InDesign adds the extension .joboptions to the name), and save the preset.
8. To load a PDF preset, choose File > Adobe PDF Presets > Define and click the Load button. Navigate to the supplied file and click Open. The preset is added to the list of available presets in InDesign, and is then also available to other Creative Suite 6 applications.

In addition to the PDF/X presets, InDesign also includes the following default PDF creation presets: Smallest File Size, High Quality Print, and Press Quality. For details of specific features of the default PDF presets in Creative Suite 6 applications, see the "Common Resources" chapter.

### Exporting PDFs versus Distilling

Adobe does not recommend creating PDFs from any Adobe application by exporting to PostScript and distilling: Text searchability, accessibility features, live transparency, and other useful features are destroyed in this approach. No modern print workflow requires this method of PDF creation: Instead, use the built-in PDF export options available in Adobe applications.

## PRINTING FROM INDESIGN

*NOTE: If you are printing to an in-house device as a proofing method, but submitting final PDF files to the RIP, consider printing from the exported PDF files rather than the native InDesign file, to ensure fidelity to the print-ready PDF.*

The comprehensive range of InDesign options lets you precisely customize print settings for your shop's workflow. Once you've determined the best combinations of settings for the devices in your shop, save those combinations as print presets. You may then be able to run many of your jobs simply by choosing a preset from the Printer Preset menu at the top of the Print dialog box. Your shop's goal should be to prepare print presets for the most common types of output so that InDesign files print easily and consistently. You can change all printer options—such as page size and color profiles—from the Print dialog box.

Print settings are independently maintained for each document, so that each document can preserve its own settings.

### The print dialog box: Common areas

In the Print dialog box, the only area that changes is that containing options specific to each panel. All other areas of the Print dialog box are common areas that remain visible regardless of the panel you are viewing. In the interest of consistency, options that don't apply in a certain workflow are dimmed, not removed. If an option is dimmed, but its label is not, the option does apply but it can't be changed.

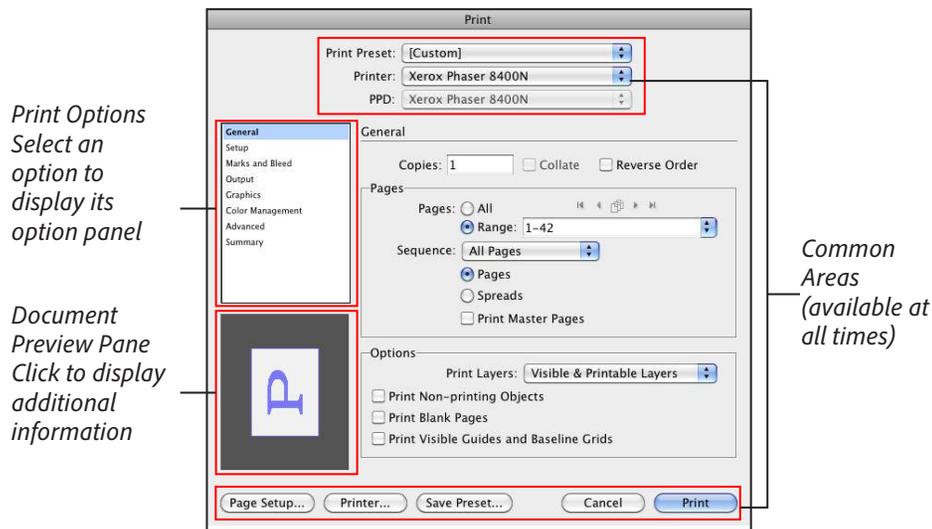
**Print Preset:** If you have created or imported any custom print presets, choose from this pop-up menu.

**Printer:** Choose the appropriate target printer from this menu, which is populated with currently installed printer drivers. You can also opt to create a PostScript file.

**PPD:** (PostScript Printer Description) The choices are determined by the current Printer menu setting. When you select a PostScript printer in the Printer menu, the PPD menu will display the name of PPD that was set up with that printer by the printer driver. Note that you cannot select another PPD; this guards against assigning a PPD other than the one properly set up with a particular device. If you want to create a PostScript file targeted to a PPD for a printer not connected to the computer, choose PostScript File from the Printer menu, and then select the desired target PPD from the PPD pop-up menu. (Usually it's best to use Adobe PDF as the target when generating PostScript you intend to process through Adobe Distiller.)

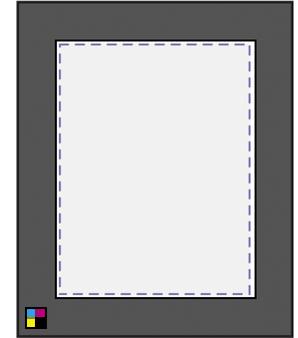
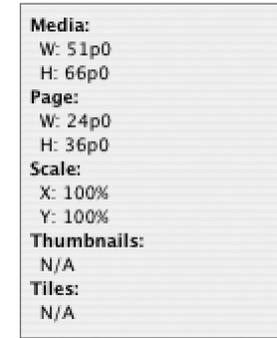
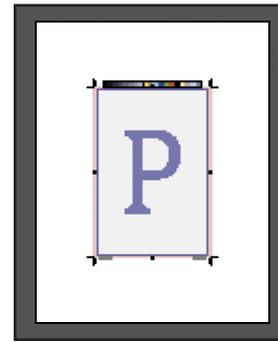
## Document Preview Pane

The preview proxy in the lower left of the Print dialog box gives graphic feedback on how well the current job settings fit the selected media. It updates dynamically any time you change a setting that affects the print area required for the job.



### The Print Dialog Box

The common areas (circled in red) and the Preview pane are available regardless of what options are selected in the print options list at left. The remaining areas of the Print dialog box change according to the option selected from the list.



### Preview Pane

The initial view (left) shows the placement of the file on the chosen media, as well as selected marks and bleed. Click once to display the text-only view (center), which provides information on the dimensions of the page and media, as well as scale factor, and whether thumbnails or tiling have been chosen. Click once more to see the Custom view (right), which shows the relationship of page to media for a cut-sheet device (such as a roll-fed printer), as well as the color mode.

The document preview proxy has three views; to cycle through the views, click the proxy. The views are as follows:

**Standard view:** Displays the relationship of a document page to the media. It shows the effects of various options such as paper size to printable area, bleed and slug areas, and page marks, as well as the effects of tiling and thumbnails. The bleed area is shown in red and the slug area is shown in blue; purple is where they overlap.

**Text view:** Lists media dimensions, document page dimensions, scale factor, and whether thumbnails have been requested, as well as number of tiles that will be generated (if tiling has been selected).

**Custom page/Cut sheet views:** Displays the results of different print settings, depending on page size. For custom page sizes, the preview shows how the media fits on the output device, the maximum supported media dimensions for the device; and the settings for offset, gap, and transverse. For cut sheets (such as Letter or A4), the preview shows the relationship of the media to printable area. The preview also shows the output mode with the appearance of the small icon at the

lower left, indicating Separations, Composite Grayscale, Composite CMYK, or Composite RGB.

## Control buttons

These buttons appear across the bottom of the Print dialog box:

**Setup Button (“Page Setup” on Mac OS):** Accesses the printer driver for the chosen printer to allow you to pick media size and some other options. Note that choices in the InDesign Print dialog box may override some choices made in the Setup/Page Setup options.

**Printer Button (Mac OS only):** Accesses the printer driver for the chosen printer to allow you to pick page range, etc. However, note that choices in the InDesign Print dialog box may override some choices made in the Printer options.

**Save Preset:** Allows naming and saving customized print settings for one device in your environment for future use. To share saved print presets with your customers or workgroup:

1. Choose File > Print Presets > Define.
2. Select the preset or presets you wish to share. Shift-click to select a range of presets, or Ctrl-click (Windows) or Command-click (Mac OS) to select multiple individual presets.
3. Click Save, and name the preset collection. InDesign saves a file with a .prst file extension. If you selected multiple presets, the .prst file will contain all selected presets.

To load saved print presets within your workgroup (or for your customers to do so):

1. Choose File > Print Presets > Define.
2. Click Load, and navigate to the supplied .prst file. All print presets in the .prst file will be added.

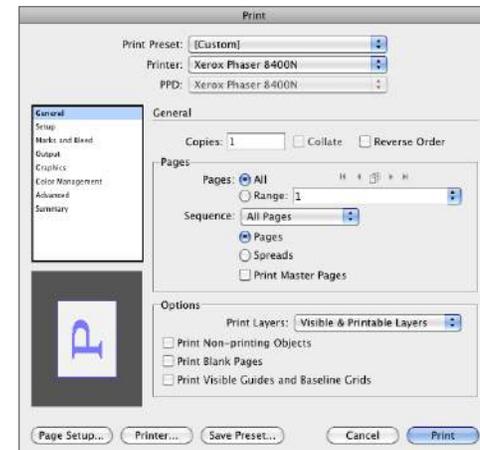
**Cancel:** Discards changes you made in the Print dialog box, with the exception of any settings saved in a print driver-specific dialog box. If

you want to save changes to the Print dialog box but don't want to print, you can click the Save Preset button to save the settings as a print preset.

## The Print Dialog box: Panels

The particular options available in the Print dialog panels depend on the chosen printer and its PPD. Consult the documentation for your device for instructions on printer-specific options.

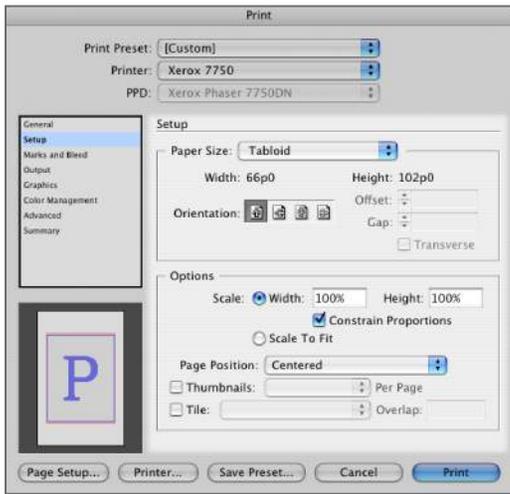
**General:** Choose number of copies and page range; whether to print spreads or master pages; whether to print non-printing layers and objects, blank pages, or guides and grids. You can choose to print even pages only, or odd pages only. Choosing Spreads will print intact spreads, regardless of the total number of pages in a spread (InDesign allows up to 10 pages in a single spread). Selecting Print Master Pages will print only the master pages, and will not print any document pages. You can also choose to print all layers, only the visible layers, or only the layers which are both visible and printable.



### General Options

Control number of copies and page range, as well as printable/non-printable elements such as layers, non-printing objects, blank pages, and guides.

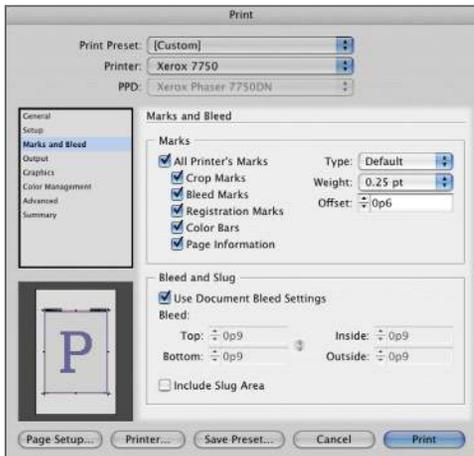
**Setup:** Choose media size (including custom sizes), orientation, scale, and page position, as well as thumbnail and tiling options.



## Setup Options

Select from media sizes available for the device (based on the PPD) and set orientation. Offset and Gap are available only for cut-sheet devices (such as roll-fed printers or imagesetters). Choose the appropriate scaling factor and page position on the media. Thumbnails are small versions of the pages, printed with up to 7 x 7 (for a total of 49) per sheet. Tile options allow you to print a large document, such as a poster, on smaller media and then tape the tiles together manually.

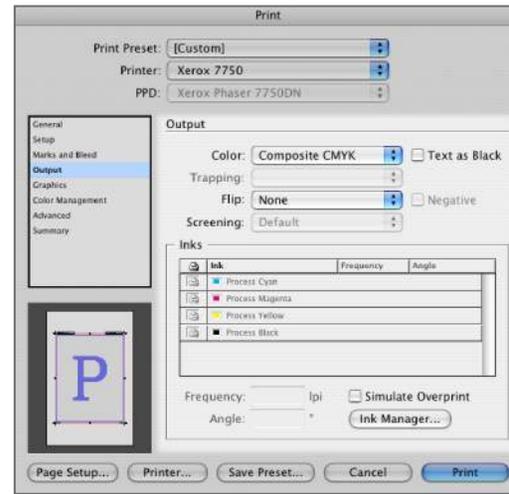
**Marks and Bleed:** Choose options for crop, bleed, and registration marks. Caution: Choosing the option to Use Document Bleed Settings won't include bleed if the Document Bleed Setting is set to zero, so check the value in the Bleed fields to confirm that they contain the appropriate value.



## Marks and Bleed Options

Choose the marks to be imaged on output, the weight for crop and bleed marks (.125 pt, .25 pt, or .5 pt), and the marks offset (between 0 and 1 inch) to avoid impinging on artwork. Check the option to Use Document Bleed Settings only if the document has been set up with a defined bleed area (File > Document Setup). Include Slug Area allows a designated Slug area to print on output.

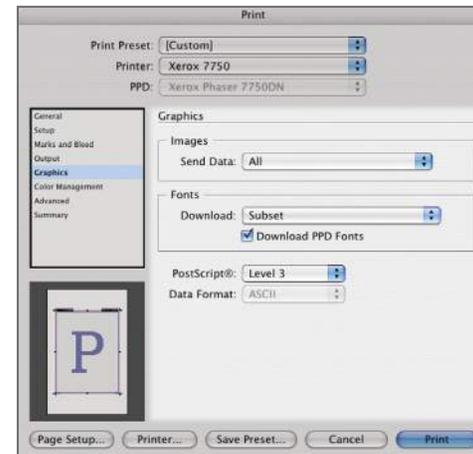
**Output:** The availability of color options such as Composite CMYK, Composite Gray, Separations, In-RIP Separations, and so on, will depend on the printer chosen. While you can specify angle and frequency for each ink, your output device will probably ignore these choices.



## Output Options

The Color options available will depend on the PPD for the target device. For example, a desktop inkjet printer will allow only RGB and Composite Gray, while a four-color laser printer will often allow Composite CMYK, Composite Gray, and separations. The Flip option allows mirrored printing (horizontal, vertical, or both). Trapping and screening are available only if separated output is chosen (or in-RIP separations). Choose Simulate Overprint to simulate the appearance of overprinted objects. The Ink Manager button launches the Ink Manager for remapping spot colors as necessary.

**Graphics:** Under Images, choose from All (complete image information), Optimized Subsampling (reduced data to speed printing), Proxy (low-resolution representations of images for quick comp printing), or None (print gray boxes to represent graphic frames). Under Fonts, choose None (if fonts are resident on the RIP), Complete (to include the complete set for each font), or Subset (download only the necessary glyphs). The option to Download PPD fonts is intended to prevent font substitution for common fonts such as Times, Helvetica, and so on. The default setting is now Subset.



## Graphics Options

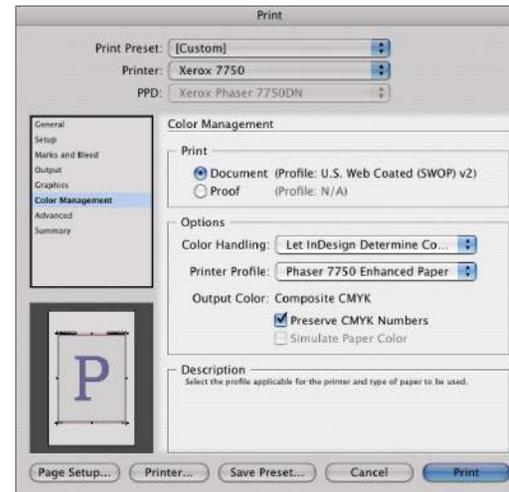
The Send Data option allows you to choose from All (full-resolution image), Optimized Subsampling (reduced resolution, suited for the printer), Proxy (low resolution), or None (images are represented by gray boxes).

## Fonts

Font download options are available for PostScript printers. Choose from Complete, Subset, or None. Use Download PPD Fonts to ensure that fonts in the document are used for imaging, rather than fonts resident on the imaging device. This can resolve font version conflicts for common fonts, such as Helvetica and Times.

**Color Management:** If you are working in a color-managed environment, and are using the correct profiles for your target device, follow these steps:

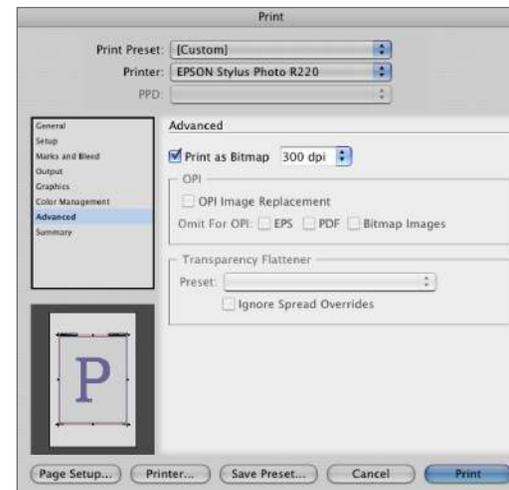
1. Under **Print**, select Document.
2. For **Color Handling**, choose Let InDesign Determine Colors.
3. For **Printer Profile**, select the profile for the output device.
4. Under **Output Color**, if you are outputting a CMYK file to an RGB device (such as an inkjet printer), select Preserve RGB Numbers; for a CMYK device (such as a laser printer), select Preserve CMYK Numbers if it is not selected by default. This option determines how InDesign handles colors without a color profile, such as images without embedded profiles. In this case, InDesign sends the color numbers directly to the output device. When this option is deselected, InDesign first converts the color numbers to the color space of the output device. Preserving numbers is recommended when you are following a safe CMYK workflow (see “Using a Safe CMYK Workflow” in this section). Preserving numbers is not recommended for printing RGB documents. When printing RGB files to an RGB inkjet printer, convert from the original RGB color space (such as sRGB or Adobe RGB) to the printer’s native color space. Consult the printer manufacturer’s documentation for pertinent information.
5. At the bottom of the Print dialog box, click either Setup button (Windows) or Printer button (Mac OS) to access the printer driver dialog box. Turn off color management for the printer, and click Print to return to the InDesign Print dialog box. Every printer driver has different color management options. If it’s not clear how to turn off color management, consult your printer documentation.



### Color Management

Your choices in this panel will depend on the setup of your particular workflow. Here, a printer profile has been selected; consequently, color management must be turned off in the Printer settings (accessed using the Printer button at the bottom of the Print dialog box) to avoid conflicting settings. The option to Preserve CMYK Numbers ensures that untagged content is not changed. Any content tagged with a profile that differs from the target device will be converted, however. Hover over each option to read helpful information in the Description area at the bottom of the dialog box.

**Advanced:** If you are using an OPI workflow, choose options for OPI image replacement. Also, select the appropriate Transparency Flattener preset. If you have not created a custom flattener preset, choose the High Resolution preset.

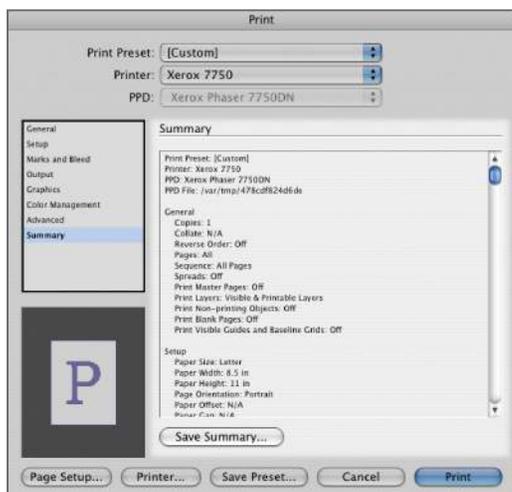


### Advanced Options

The Print As Bitmap option is only available for non-PostScript printers; it may be useful if complex content causes an error. Choose a resolution from the pop-up menu to the right of the Print as Bitmap option. Choose the appropriate Transparency Flattener preset for your workflow. For most situations, High Resolution is appropriate, but if you have created a custom flattener preset, choose it.

**Summary:** Here you’ll see an overview of all the settings selected; a text log of the summary can be saved by clicking the Save Summary button at the bottom of this panel. You may find it useful to save the

summary log and archive it with the final files, to assist with future handling of the file.



### Summary

*This provides an overview of all the print settings currently in effect. Scroll through the log window to see all settings without having to click on individual options in the left pane. To save this report as a text file, click the Save Summary button at the bottom.*

## Printing booklets

Although you probably use a dedicated imposition solution for complex imposed pagination, it can sometimes be helpful to print simple paginated comp versions of a multipage document to visualize the final pagination. The Print Booklet feature in InDesign (File > Print Booklet) allows you to do this, without tying up a workstation devoted to imposition. However, the Print Booklet feature is no substitute for dedicated imposition software, especially since your final printing files are likely to be PDF files, not native InDesign files. It is preferable to generate imposed mechanical proofs via your imposition software, using final files.

There are three configurations available in Print Booklet: 2-up Saddle Stitch, 2-up Perfect Bound, and Consecutive (which includes 2-up, 3-up and 4-up Consecutive). You can also pick a page range for the imposition. The modes of imposition are:

**2-up Saddle Stitch:** Creates two-page printer spreads, which can be duplexed, collated, folded and stapled. If necessary to complete the pagination, blank pages are added to the end of the document. The

options for Space Between Pages, Bleed Between Pages, and Signature Size are not available in Saddle Stitch mode.

**2-up Perfect Bound:** Creates two-page printer spreads for duplexing and trimming on all four sides of the pages, to be bound into to a cover with a spine. If the number of pages can't be evenly divided by the number of pages in a signature, InDesign adds blank pages to the end of the document.

**Consecutive:** Creates a two-, three-, or four-page panel appropriate to a foldout booklet or brochure. In Consecutive mode, Bleed Between Pages, Creep, and Signature Size are not available. This mode does not provide any option for short-trimming a panel that folds in first.

Print Booklet is, as the name implies, a method of printing. It does not create a new InDesign document with imposed pages, but produces a print stream with the pages in position. To use the Print Booklet function:

1. Choose File > Print Booklet, and if appropriate, pick a preset from the Print Preset menu. Or choose Current Document Settings to use the print settings in effect for the document.
2. Pick a page range, using hyphens to separate the ends of a range (for example, "1-16" to include all the pages between 1 and 16, inclusive). To choose individual pages, use commas—for example, to select pages 2, 4, 12 and 16, type "2,4,12,16" (without the quotation marks). If the document uses section starts, in the Range field you will have to enter any section numbers (such as "Sec3:16" for page 16 of Section 3). Or you may find it easier to specify the page numbers by using absolute numbering convention—just type a plus sign ("+") to indicate absolute page position. For example, to select the first eight pages of the document, type +1 - +8.

To change settings such as printer's marks and media size, click the Print Settings button at the bottom of the Print Booklet dialog box. This takes you to the standard print dialog panels. When you've modified the

settings as needed, click OK, and you'll be returned to the Print Booklet dialog box to proceed.

## The Setup options

These options in the Print Booklet dialog box include:

**Space Between Pages:** The gap between pages; available for all the booklet types except Saddle Stitch. In Perfect Bound booklets, the Space Between Pages value must be at least the width of the Creep value.

**Bleed Between Pages:** Available only when 2-up Perfect Bound is selected, the value must be between zero and half the Space Between Pages value.

**Creep:** Specifies the amount of space necessary to compensate for paper thickness and folding on each signature. Enter a positive value to push outside pages out from the spine (leaving the center spread unchanged); enter a negative value to push interior pages in, toward the spine (leaving the outside spread unchanged). Creep is available for 2-up Saddle Stitch and 2-up Perfect Bound booklets.

**Signature Size:** The number of pages in each signature (available only for 2-up Perfect Bound). If the number of pages to be imposed is not evenly divisible by the Signature Size value, blank pages are added to the end of the document as necessary.

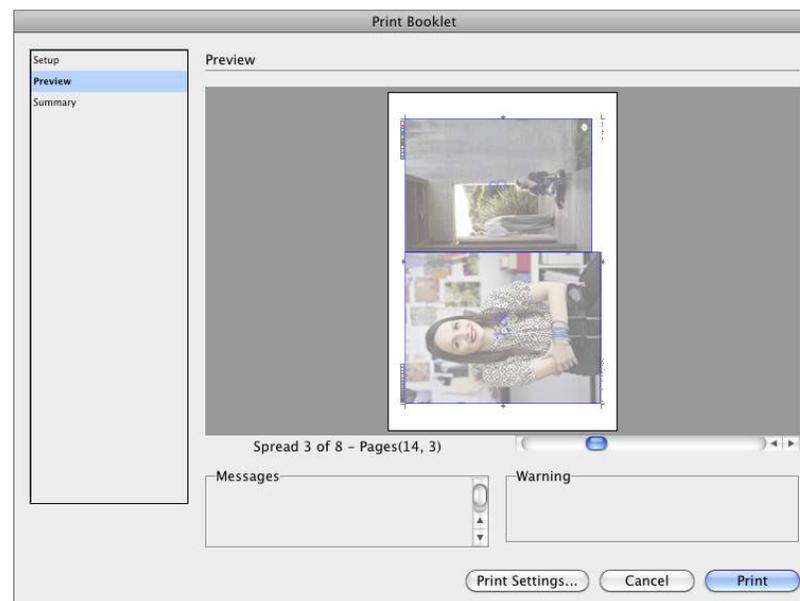
**Automatically Adjust To Fit Marks And Bleeds:** Margins calculated to accommodate bleeds and printer marks. Deselect this option to set the margin values manually.

**Margins:** Amount of space that surrounds the printer spread. Deselect Automatically Adjust To Fit Marks And Bleeds to manually set the values. Higher values increase the space beyond the marks and bleeds. Too low a value may clip the marks and bleeds. Available for all booklet types.

**Print Blank Printer Spreads:** Determines whether blank spreads are printed. InDesign adds blank pages or spreads to the end of the document if the number of pages to be imposed is not evenly divisible by the number of pages in a signature.

## Preview

The Preview panel allows you to view the arrangement of imposed pages, for checking crossover art, page order, creep settings, marks, and bleed. The Messages and Warning areas inform you of any problems, or whether blank pages had to be added to complete signatures.



### Print Booklet Preview

*Page through the display to see pages included, as well as the results of any creep values. The Messages area displays whether blank pages had to be added to fulfill the signature; the Warning area informs you if media size is too small for the imposed spreads.*

## HELPING CUSTOMERS PREPARE INDESIGN FILES

When it's time for final printed output, it is easier than ever for a customer to locate an Adobe InDesign prepress service provider. The widespread acceptance of Adobe InDesign by prepress service providers results from a long and proven record of reliable, consistent output and a deep set of tools specifically geared to identify and resolve

prepress issues before printing. As with every previous version of the software, Adobe InDesign CS6 incorporates requests from print professionals worldwide as solicited by Adobe. This close and continuing collaboration with the print publishing community makes possible great advances in output efficiency and quality.

As a page layout application, InDesign is the aggregator of text, artwork from Illustrator, and images from Photoshop. Consequently, in preparing to output InDesign files, you (and customers) have to consider issues relating to objects and effects created within InDesign as well as attributes of placed artwork and fonts used.

### Common-sense tips for customers

Customer education is an important part of a print service provider's relationship with clients. In addition to providing basic specifications for providing files for print, it's helpful if you make sure that clients are well-versed in the details of building and submitting files for successful print. You can also help by supplying custom InDesign and Acrobat preflight profiles and encouraging your customers to examine their own files before submitting them. In light of complex features such as transparency, it's easy to lose sight of the basics:

- Monitor the Live Preflight module in the status bar of InDesign documents to catch problems early.
- Build to correct trim size, keeping in mind any specifications for image area (necessary distance from trim and fold), and the need to accommodate any short-trim panels.
- Ensure that adequate bleed is created, and that bleed is included in PDFs submitted as job files.
- Avoid radical scaling of images (true for both enlargements and reductions).
- Use Separations Preview to check for correct plates.
- Reconcile extraneous spot colors, by editing content or by using Ink Manager.

- Convert any spot colors to process if they are intended to print CMYK, using the "Lab color values" in Ink Manager, as described previously. This is often preferable to performing the conversion to CMYK during the output process when transparency is involved.
- Include 100% printed comps (or comps marked for size).
- Do some housecleaning before submitting the job: prune extraneous elements, empty frames, and unused styles and swatches
- Communicate any special circumstances, including custom-finishing such as embossing, foil-stamping, spot varnishes, complicated folding, or custom binding.

### Preparing files containing transparency

Most modern workflows have no difficulty handling InDesign files containing transparency. You should consult the documentation for your RIPs and output devices for specific details. Here are some general guidelines:

- Don't flatten transparency unnecessarily or prematurely. Keeping transparency live means that you can take advantage of more modern workflows such as those using the Adobe PDF Print Engine. Thus, don't flatten Photoshop files—keep layers intact. Save Illustrator files as native Illustrator (.ai) rather than as EPS files.
- Don't use transparency unnecessarily: for example, to create a 20% black tint, don't apply 20% opacity to a solid black frame; instead, create and apply a swatch that's a 20% tint of black.
- If possible, place text at the top of stacking order, or on a top layer, to eliminate any possibility that type will be converted to outlines during transparency flattening.

For more on handling transparency in customer files, see "Common Resources" chapter in this document.

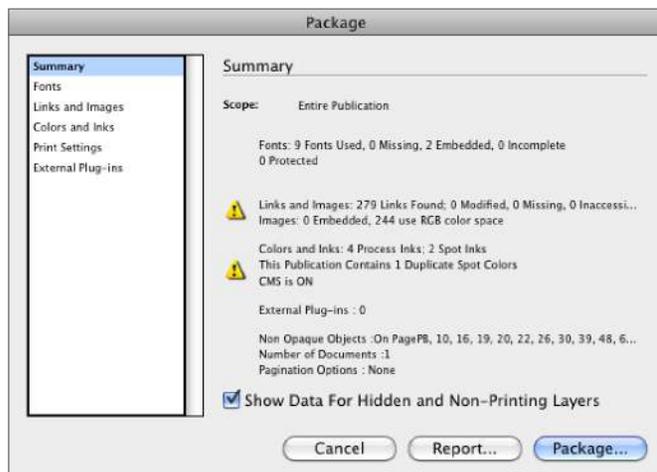
### Packaging a Job

In previous versions of InDesign, activating the Package function would automatically perform a preflight. Now that Preflight is dynamic, the

Package function does not perform preflight as a separate operation; it just displays the current results of preflighting in the Package dialog. This series of screens will look familiar to users of earlier versions: they are the same screens as seen in Preflight in previous versions of InDesign.

To use the Package function, choose File > Package. InDesign displays a summary overview describing the state of the document, incorporating any problems that have been found by Preflight. Any problems are highlighted with yellow alert triangles. To see more detail for each topic, select from the list in the left column of the Package dialog box.

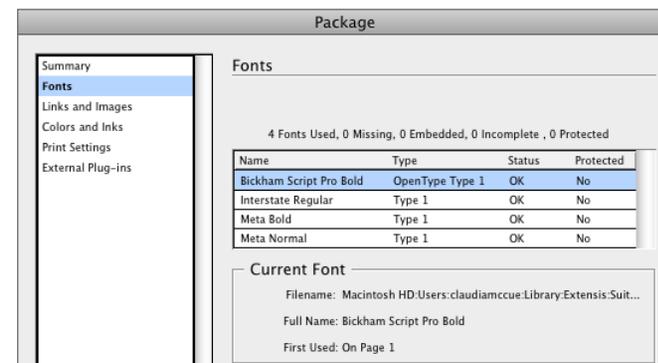
The **Summary** screen provides a quick overview of potential issues you might wish to resolve before packaging the job.



### Summary Screen

The Summary screen displays an overview of the file's attributes, highlighting problem areas with yellow alert triangles. Click a topic name to see more detail on that topic.

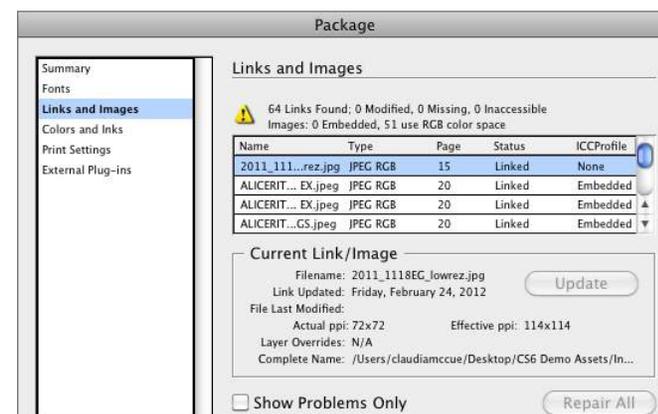
The **Fonts** screen lists fonts used in the document (including fonts needed by placed artwork), and identifies font formats used (such as OpenType, TrueType, or Type 1) and their status (OK, Missing, or Protected). Select a font name from the list, and the Current Font area displays the directory path to the font file itself, and indicates the page on which the font is first used.



### Fonts Screen

The Fonts screen identifies font formats, and highlights missing fonts, including fonts missing in placed artwork. Protected fonts are fonts which cannot be embedded in PDFs.

The **Links and Images** screen lists the status, type, and color space of images used in the document. (However, it will not list the color space of placed Illustrator files, EPSs, or PDFs.) Click an item in the list, and the Current Link/Image area also displays the Actual and Effective ppi of the file. Actual ppi is the resolution of the saved image; Effective ppi is the net resolution as a result of any scaling within InDesign. InDesign cannot report the resolution of image content within a placed PDF or Illustrator AI or EPS file. To simplify the display, check the Show Problems Only option.



### Links and Images Screen

The Links and Images screen highlights missing images and RGB images. Select an image from the list and additional info is displayed below, including the actual ppi and effective ppi, as well as any layer overrides. You can simplify the list by checking the option to Show Problems only.

The Package report does not list any linked images missing from placed Illustrator (.ai) files, nor are such images gathered when packaging a job. Advise your customer to either embed the image, supply it separately, or save the file as an Illustrator PDF or an Illustrator EPS (which includes the image information by default). Supplying the image separately offers the most flexibility, if you should need to edit or color-correct the image.

The **Colors and Inks** screen lists inks used in the document. If there are extraneous inks, use Ink Manager to resolve duplicates. The angle and lines per inch information has no impact on the ultimate imaging of the job; those attributes are assigned at the RIP based on your particular setup.

The **Print Settings** screen displays the settings in effect when the file was last printed from InDesign. These settings have no effect on the processing of the job, but may be helpful in troubleshooting future output.

The **External Plug-ins** screen lists any plug-ins used in the creation of the document. Generally, plug-ins used by document creators are not necessary for successful output by other users, so entries in this list don't usually constitute a problem.

Resolve any remaining issues (such as missing fonts or graphics), and click the Package button. The next step is to fill out the Printing Instructions form, with fields for contact information and special instructions concerning the job. Whether or not you fill out the form, the Package process generates a text file containing information about the package, including plug-ins used, fonts packaged, inks used in the document, print settings, and a complete list of the files packaged.

Note: The "Filename" field in the Printing Instructions form is the filename of the instructions text file that is generated during the Package procedure, not the filename of the InDesign file being

packaged. You can accept the default name, "Instructions.txt," or enter a new name, but don't leave the field blank.

### The Printing Instructions Form

Customers can use this form to supply contact information, as well as special instructions and useful information about the job.

In the Create Package Folder dialog box that follows, you're presented with the following options:

- **Copy Fonts (Except CJK):** All fonts used by InDesign are packaged. If any Illustrator art requires fonts that haven't been (or can't be) embedded, those fonts will be packaged. In the Roman (Western English) version of InDesign, Chinese, Japanese, and Korean (CJK) fonts are not packaged. If such fonts are required in the job, they must be gathered manually. Fonts required by a Photoshop native file (.psd) won't be packaged. Advise customers to save such files as Photoshop PDF files instead, so that fonts will be embedded and not require packaging. This option is selected by default; leave it checked.
- **Copy Linked Graphics:** All graphics linked to the InDesign file are copied into the folder created in the Package process. However, any images linked to placed Illustrator files are not packaged. Advise customers to use the Illustrator option to Include Linked Files (available in the Save dialog box), or to manually copy the needed images

into the Links folder inside the Package folder. This option is selected by default; leave it checked.

- **Update Graphic Links in Package:** This option helps to ensure that all graphic and image links are up-to-date. When you package a document, the linked files are collected and copied to one folder named Links. The packaged InDesign file looks in that Links folder to find all placed graphics, rather than in the original location, such as a server volume. This option is selected by default; leave it checked.
- **Use Document Hyphenation Exceptions Only:** This option embeds the customer's user dictionary in the InDesign document, and helps to ensure that other user dictionaries are ignored. This can help prevent unwanted line break changes. This option is not selected by default.
- **Include Fonts and Links From Hidden Document Layers:** This option includes all fonts and linked files on InDesign document layers that are hidden. This option is turned off by default, meaning that Adobe InDesign CS6 only includes content on layers that are visible at the

time the document is packaged. This option is not selected by default; to ensure that all needed artwork and fonts are packaged, be sure to select this option if needed layers are hidden at the time of packaging.

- **View Report:** This option automatically displays the Printing Instructions report after the package is created. The report is always saved to the package folder whether or not this option is selected. This option is not selected by default.

### **Additional sources of information:**

There are many sources of information about InDesign. The following is not an exhaustive list but rather a selection of websites that may be of use to you and your customers:

InDesign Secrets: <http://www.indesignsecrets.com>

InDesign User Groups: <http://www.indesignusergroup.com>

Forums: <http://forums.adobe.com/community/indesign>

Knowledgebase: <http://helpx.adobe.com/indesign.html>

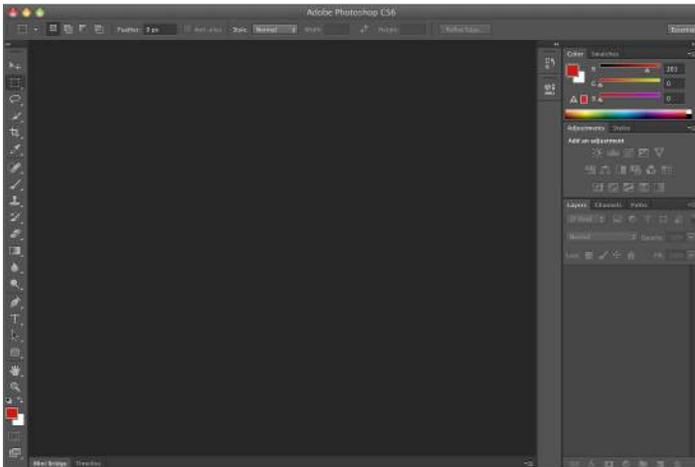
# Chapter 3: Adobe Photoshop CS6 and Photoshop CS6 Extended

It is rare that a final job comes to you as a Photoshop file; images are usually placed into page layouts or illustration files for design and output. So, in addition to being mindful of basic image attributes within Photoshop, you must also keep in mind how those images are handled and output by those other applications.

## PHOTOSHOP CS6: NEW FEATURES

As in Creative Suite 5, there are two versions of Photoshop in Creative Suite 6—Photoshop CS6 and Photoshop CS6 Extended. Photoshop CS6 is part of Design Standard; Photoshop CS6 Extended is part of Design Web & Premium, Production Premium, Master Collection, and the Creative Cloud. New features in Photoshop CS6 include:

- **New Dark Interface:** The new charcoal-gray interface makes it easier to concentrate on and judge color and content in images. If you wish to change the shade of the interface, go to Photoshop > Preferences > Interface (Mac) or Edit > Preferences > Interface (PC) and choose a lighter or darker shade.



- **Mercury Graphics Engine:** By taking advantage of the computer's GPU (graphics processing unit), Photoshop CS6 and CS6 Extended offer enhanced performance in panning and zooming, as well as operations such as the Crop tool, Liquify, Adaptive Wide Angle, Puppet Warp, and Lighting Effects. (Some GPU-enabled features are not supported on Windows XP>)
- **Auto-Recovery and Background Save:** Copies of working images are automatically saved every 10 minutes (the timing can be set from 5 minutes to 1 hour), providing recovery after a power outage or system crash.
- **Improved Crop Tool:** Choose the Crop tool, and handles appear at the corners of the image for more intuitive cropping. Use the Straighten option to straighten an image before cropping. You can also choose to maintain cropped pixels, providing later flexibility.
- **Improved Auto Corrections:** Algorithms from image research fuels enhanced Auto controls; using them as a starting point for making adjustments may save you substantial time in image correction.
- **New Properties Panel:** The features of the Masks panel have been moved to the new Properties panel (Window > Properties). Mask properties allow you to manipulate the position, smoothness, and feather amount for existing masks. In addition, controls and options for Adjustment layers now appear in the Properties panel.
- **New Vector Layer Options:** Fill and Stroke color controls now appear in the Options bar, along with the option to create custom dashed strokes around vector shapes.
- **Filter and Search Layers:** Easily target layers in complex files—search by blending mode, kind, name, effect, or attribute (such as visibility or lock status).

Photoshop CS6 Extended includes the above features, plus these new features:

- **Improved 3D Effects:** Convert the contents of any floating layer (including text, which will be rasterized) into 3D objects. Apply beveled effects and assign textures to individual surfaces. Create and import custom textures, and paint on 3D surfaces. Interaction with 3D controls is now more intuitive.
- **Measurements Log:** Measure distance and angle, count objects, and export to a text file.
- **DICOM Support:** Photoshop CS6 Extended can open medical scans in the Digital Imaging and Communications in Medicine format. Frames in the file are converted to layers. While you can use the customary Photoshop tools to modify a DICOM image, resaving the file in the DICOM format will eliminate any adjustment layers or masks.

The integration between Photoshop and the other Creative Suite 6 components enables you and your customers to take advantage of the flexibility afforded by the native Photoshop format. Multiple layers can be used for complex compositing and color correction; type and other vector components can add to visual interest, and consistent color management across Creative Suite 6 ensures predictable output.

## GENERAL GUIDELINES

While your workflow has its own particular requirements, some general rules about resolution and color space still apply. When you supply specifications to your customers, to help them prepare jobs for submission, it's important to make sure that they're educated about issues you encounter with image content. The increasing use of digital cameras means that many designers are submitting their own images, rather than relying on professional scanner operators to handle the scaling, color, retouching, and resolution control that previously was the province of print service providers or color trade shops. This section will help you educate customers, as well as provide guidance for handling customer images that need modification to solve printing problems.

## Resolution

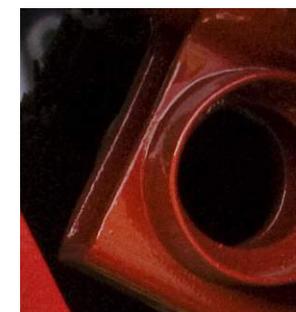
Whether its origin is a digital camera or scanner, an image is composed of pixels (short for "picture element"). The number of these little colored squares per linear inch (or per centimeter, depending on your system of measurement) is described as the resolution of the image, expressed in pixels per inch (ppi). The higher the resolution of an image that's a given size, the more detail that can be displayed.



36 ppi: 128 KB



72 ppi: 236 KB



300 ppi: 2.2 MB



*Upsampling: Resolution increased to 300 ppi from 72 ppi.*

### Image Resolution

*The higher the number of the pixels per inch (ppi), the more detail an image can display. More pixels per inch also means larger image size. Increasing the resolution, or upsampling, from 72 ppi to 300 ppi in Photoshop does not recreate missing information. Note the softening of detail in the image that has been upsampled in Photoshop, compared to an image scanned to the correct size at the 300-ppi resolution.*

The appropriate resolution for an image to be printed, based on the final line screen, is 1.5 to 2 times the line screen, at or above its final size. For example, an image to be printed at 150 lines per inch (lpi) should be scanned to final size with a resolution of 225 ppi to 300 ppi. There is no advantage to exceeding 300 ppi for an image to be printed at 150 lpi; the excess information incurs unnecessary processing with no visual improvement. Rather than do the math, most users elect to use 300 ppi as a general target resolution.

It's important to emphasize that, whatever the target resolution, the image must be scanned (or photographed digitally) at or above its final printing size. That is, an image intended to print at a size of 5 x 7 inches and a line screen of 150 lpi should be scanned to 5 x 7 inches at 300 ppi. Scanning an image at 300 ppi, but at a size of 2 x 3 inches, with the intention of scaling up the image to the correct final size of 5 x 7 inches (either in Photoshop or in a page layout program), will compromise detail after resizing. Photoshop can interpolate information, but this results in the program's "best guess" approximation of the missing pixels. There is no substitute for a correctly sized original image of the proper resolution.

Compared to scaling up, scaling down an image is less likely to produce obvious loss of detail, whether the scaling is done in Photoshop, Illustrator, or InDesign. Even though image data will be discarded, the smaller size camouflages the loss. Plus, if you use the Bicubic Sharper method in Photoshop when scaling down the size of an image (which is recommended; this is discussed in the following topic), slight edge sharpening is applied to compensate visually for the discarded data.

### **Actual versus Effective resolution**

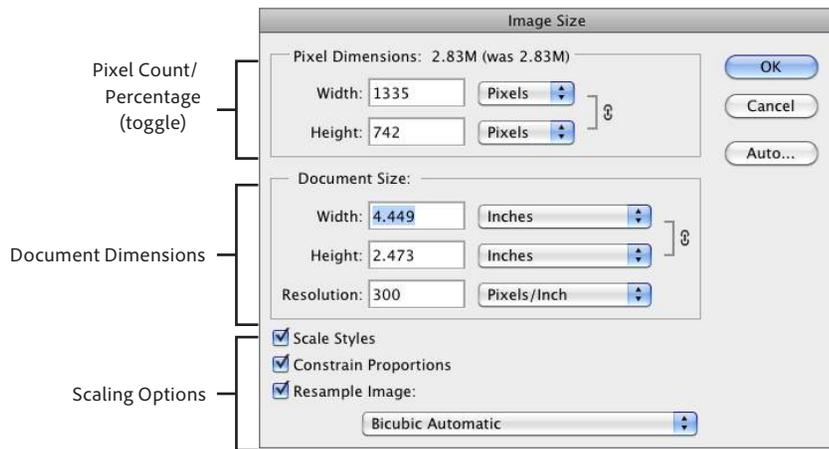
The best approach to image creation (whether scanning or shooting a digital photograph) is to have the image at the proper size and resolution before using it in other applications (or printing directly from Photoshop). Generally, if you start with an image that is 300 ppi at a given size, you have some leeway; scaling up to 125% in a page layout probably won't degrade detail in an obvious way. An image without much detail (such as a background shot of a soft, gauzy sky) could still be acceptable if scaled up to 150% in a page layout. An image with a resolution of 300 ppi that is scaled up to 200% in an InDesign or Illustrator document has an effective resolution of 150 ppi. In other words, scaling an image up in InDesign decreases the resolution, and scaling an image down in InDesign increases the resolution. Conversely,

a 300-ppi image that is scaled down to 50% has an effective resolution of 600 ppi. Scaling down images in InDesign or Illustrator does not reduce the amount of information included in an exported PDF, or an outgoing print stream, as no pixels are actually discarded. Processing time may increase slightly in the RIP. If just a few images are scaled down in a page layout, it's probably not worthwhile to use Photoshop to scale down the images and update them. But if most of your images are scaled down—or if images are scaled down drastically—it may be worthwhile to take the time to reduce their size in Photoshop and update them in the page layout program. Weigh the time required to scale the images against the increase in processing time—and increased storage required for oversized images—to decide whether it is necessary to create downsized images.

### **Resampling images**

When image scaling becomes necessary, Photoshop offers some refinements to optimize the results. Choose Image > Image Size to see the Image Size dialog box. You can resize an image by pixel dimensions or document size. Under both the pixel count and document size options, you can also specify a percentage size. If Resample Image is not selected, the Pixel Dimensions part of the dialog box is dimmed, because the pixel count won't change if the image is not resampled.

Keep in mind that in-RIP image interpolation is comparable to that in Photoshop. And image content will ultimately be resampled as part of the RIP process. Consequently, attempting to get a "head start" by resampling or scaling in Photoshop actually adds an unnecessary interpolation step. The only exception is for images that require substantial sharpening, which should be performed at or near the final target resolution. Note that upsampling an image does not improve it. This is especially true of screen shots, which should be left at their original resolution throughout the workflow if possible.



## Image Size

Choose options according to how you intend to resize an image—by dimensions or by pixel count. (Scaling a placed image in InDesign or Illustrator does not interpolate image data.)

If the Resample Image option is selected, Photoshop must interpolate information. That is, it must manufacture image data to “fill in the blanks” if the image is scaled up. If the image is scaled down with Resample Image selected, interpolation governs what information is discarded. The scaling options include six methods for resampling, and even offers parenthetical hints about suitable uses for the methods:

- **Nearest Neighbor (Preserve Hard Edges):** Appropriate when resizing screen shots (to avoid anti-aliasing small text), but inappropriate for photographic images.
- **Bilinear:** Averages the color of surrounding pixels; fast, but produces medium-quality results.
- **Bicubic (Best For Smooth Gradients):** Slower, but produces smoother results than Bilinear.
- **Bicubic Smoother (Best for Enlargement):** As the hint implies, smooths the results to minimize obvious pixels or jagged artifacts.
- **Bicubic Sharper (Best for Reduction):** Accentuates edge sharpening to camouflage the loss of data when scaling down images.

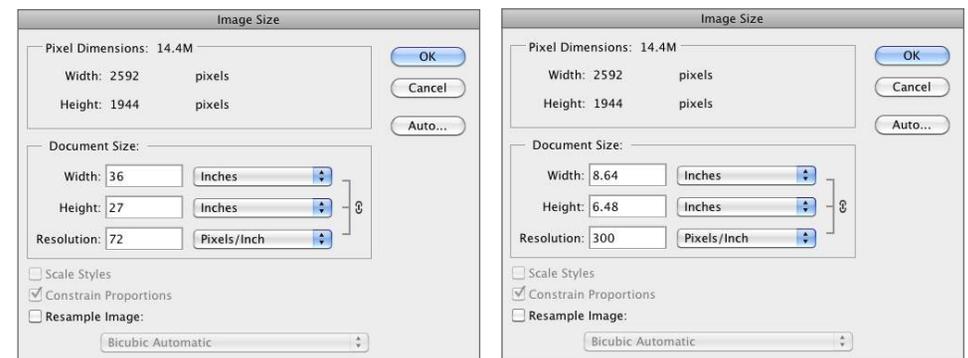
- **Bicubic Automatic:** This new option selects the best method for resampling, based on the type of resize selected.

To specify a default scaling method, choose Edit > Preferences > General (Windows) or Photoshop > Preferences > General (Mac OS), and then choose a method from the Image Interpolation Methods menu.

## Changing resolution without resampling

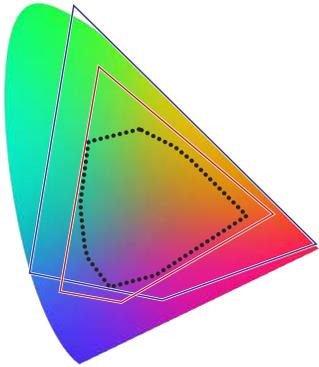
During interpolation, pixels are created or averaged from existing information in the image. But if you resize an image without resampling, no information is created or lost. The most common example of this approach involves digital camera images, which are frequently very large, but with low resolution. The solution for this sort of image is to change the resolution without altering pixels.

Choose Image > Image Size, and deselect the Resample Image option. You’ll then see that dimensions and resolution are linked together: increase the resolution and the dimensions are reduced. Decrease the dimensions and the resolution is increased. Set the resolution to an appropriate value, such as 300 ppi, and the width and height fall into place accordingly. With this approach, no pixels are lost or created, so the file size is not changed. In essence, only the number of pixels per inch (or centimeter) is changed, not the actual pixels themselves.



## Resizing Without Resampling

Digital camera shots often open in Photoshop with low resolution but oversized dimensions. Turn off the Resample Image option and set the resolution or dimensions. The dimensions and resolution are interrelated, so the file size of the image does not change because no pixels are lost (or manufactured).



### Color Gamuts

*A comparison of AdobeRGB (red line), ProPhotoRGB (blue line) and CMYK (dotted line) gamuts to the range of visible light (color shape).*

## COLOR MODE

If you are using a color-managed workflow, you may be accustomed to receiving RGB or Lab images from your customers, tagged with the correct color profiles. All Creative Suite 6 products fully support a color-managed workflow, and Adobe Bridge can synchronize color settings across all the programs in Creative Suite 6 for consistency. (For more on color management, see the “Common Resources” chapter in this document.)

If you are not using color management, you probably expect your customers to supply CMYK or grayscale images in submitted jobs. There are also other color modes to consider, such as grayscale, multitone, and bitmap (bilevel).

### RGB

The native color mode of images from scanners and digital cameras is RGB (red-green-blue). As humans, we also “think” in RGB, because the color receptors in our eyes process red, green, and blue light to create our view of the world. The gamut of RGB light is somewhat larger than the range of colors that can be printed with CMYK process inks, which is why some vibrant colors in RGB images displayed on a monitor lose richness when printed. This may require some explanation to customers who are disappointed when comparing a printed piece to what they see on their monitor.

If part of your workflow consists of printing to inkjet printers, you should keep images in RGB: Even though inkjet printers image with cyan, magenta, yellow, black (and often additional colors), they expect an RGB print stream and can more faithfully render the image if it is not in CMYK. This may seem counterintuitive, but these devices perform their own conversions, geared toward the capabilities of their particular dyes or pigments.

Even if you will ultimately image to a platesetter, there are advantages to the large color gamut available in the RGB color mode; if your workflow supports it, keep images in the RGB color mode as long as possible to avoid premature loss of color data. Some color corrections are easier in RGB (such as setting neutral points) and many Photoshop filters do not work in CMYK.

### CMYK

If you prefer to receive CMYK images, but your customer has supplied images in another color space, such as RGB or Lab, you must decide whether to convert the images to CMYK yourself, or rely on the color-conversion function of your RIP. In-RIP color conversions from many vendors are more predictable than in the past, but if you prefer to make your own conversions, it’s important to know how to control the conversion to CMYK in Photoshop.

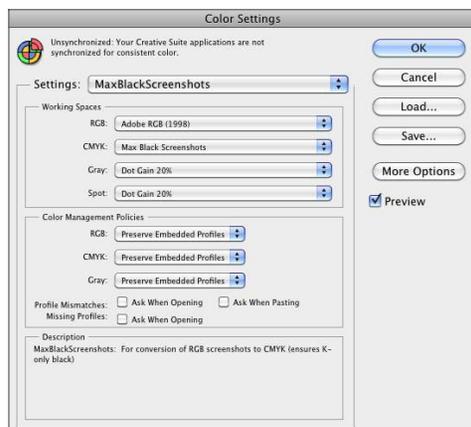
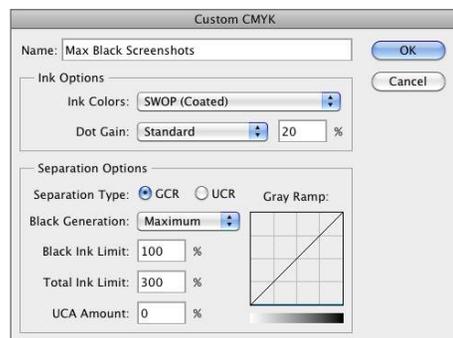
When converting between color modes, Photoshop uses the color settings currently in effect. If you have a custom profile for the intended target (such as your press), you should choose that in your color settings. If you prefer to receive CMYK images from your customers, supply them with your preferred settings to ensure that they send images that are appropriate for your workflow.

### Special case: Screen captures

Screen captures benefit from special handling when converting from RGB to CMYK. Create a special Gray Component Replacement (GCR) separation setup that generates a maximum black, replacing all four-color grays and blacks with shades of process black. This prevents small

black text (and the gray backgrounds commonly found in software screens) from becoming a four-color black, thus minimizing blurring or color casts on press. To create the custom separation setup:

1. Choose Edit > Color Settings.
2. In the Working Spaces area of the dialog box, choose Custom CMYK from the CMYK pop-up menu.
3. In the Custom CMYK dialog box, choose GCR for the Separation Type.
4. For Black Generation, choose Maximum. Wherever the image contains equal levels of red, green and blue (which constitutes a neutral gray in RGB images), those areas will be replaced with shades of black, with no cyan, magenta, or yellow ink in those areas.
5. Type a name for the custom CMYK separation recipe (or accept the name that Photoshop generates for you), and click OK. This returns you to the Color Settings dialog box.



### Screen Captures

Create a custom CMYK working space that uses GCR and a Maximum Black Generation to replace all four-color gray and black content with shades of process black. Use this custom separation setup when converting screen captures from RGB to CMYK.

In the Color Settings dialog box, click Save and name the new color setting. Photoshop will save the color setting in the default location. If you want to save the settings file somewhere else, navigate to that location. You're also given the opportunity to provide a helpful description in the Color Settings Comment dialog box that appears when you save the setting. Type remarks in this field to guide subsequent users of the setting. Click OK to close the Color Settings dialog box. Your new separation setup is now in effect.



### Comments

When you create custom separation setups, enter comments in the Color Settings Comment dialog to help other users understand how to use the setup.

Note: This special separation setup remains in effect until you choose another setup. It's appropriate only for converting screen captures and similar images. Be sure to choose a more appropriate separation setup before performing general image conversions.

### Grayscale

Grayscale images are intended to print only in black ink, but beware of images that look grayscale but are actually color images. Photoshop CS4 introduced a special black-and-white color adjustment (Image > Adjustments > Black & White), which provides sophisticated controls for governing the conversion from color to the appearance of a black-and-white image. However, the Black & White adjustment does not actually convert the image to grayscale.



### Not Truly Grayscale

While this image appears to be black-only, the title bar of the document tells the truth; it's actually RGB.

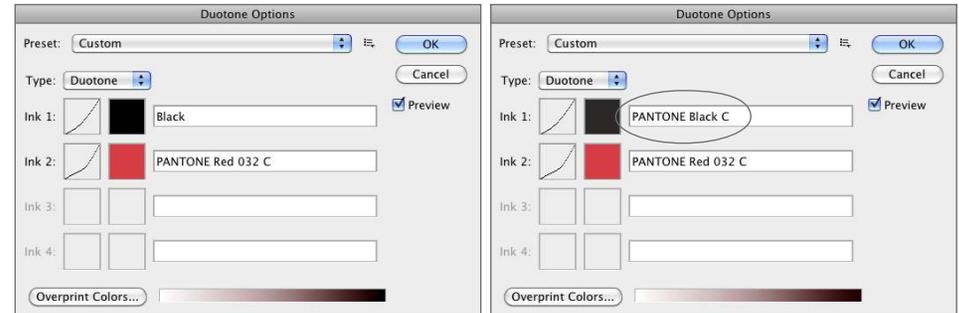
If such an image is not converted to grayscale, even very slight color shifts on press could produce a color cast in the printed image. An image that's color—but appears grayscale—still displays its color mode in the document's title bar. Look for the CMYK or RGB identifier after the image name in the title bar. Just finish the conversion by choosing Image > Mode > Grayscale, and update the image links if the image is used in an InDesign layout or Illustrator file.

### Multitone images (duotone, tritone)

Multitone images such as duotones, tritones, and quadtones are actually grayscale images containing embedded transfer curves. The transfer curves contain information about what colors are generated during output, as well as the relative values of those colors. Most commonly, process black is one component of a duotone or tritone, which can cause a common problem you may encounter with multitone images supplied by customers.

The initial dialog box for duotone options (Image > Mode > Duotone) automatically populates the black ink name for you. Unless the image is intended to print with a spot black ink rather than process black, this default black ink should not be changed. There is no need to manually

pick a black ink. This results in an additional, unintended plate being generated during output.



### Duotone Settings

The default settings for a duotone image use process black for the black plate. Choosing Pantone Black instead, generates an extra, unwanted black plate.

To fix this problem, open the image in Photoshop, and choose Image > Mode > Duotone to open the Duotone Options dialog box. Highlight the incorrect black ink name, and change it to Black, with a capital "B," to indicate standard process black. Update the image link in InDesign or Illustrator as necessary, and delete the extraneous ink from the Swatches palette of the target document.

On Windows, the duotone presets are found in: C:\Program Files\Adobe\Adobe Photoshop CS6\Presets\Duotones. In Mac OS, the Macintosh, the presets are found in: Applications/Adobe Photoshop CS6/Presets: Duotones. To save a custom preset for multitone images, click Save in the Duotone Options dialog box. Save to the default location, or choose an alternative location. Photoshop creates a file with the .ado extension. To load a duotone preset, click Load in the Duotone Options dialog box and navigate to the desired preset.

### Bitmap images

Bitmap images (also called bilevel or line art scans) consist of only black and white (or black and transparent) pixels, with no intermediate shades of gray. Such images can be colored when placed into Illustrator or InDesign, taking on whatever color is applied. The black

areas of the bitmap image become the color of the applied swatch, while the white areas remain unaffected.

## IMAGE FORMATS

Some of the old restrictions on image formats no longer apply in Creative Suite. In modern workflows, you are not limited to using TIFF and EPS files; more modern formats such as native Photoshop and PDF provide more flexibility and function. While you may feel more comfortable with the time-tested formats, the newer formats offer significant benefits. In other words, do not fear the new approaches, and do not assume that you have to convert Photoshop files to something more familiar in order to image a job successfully. In a full Adobe Creative Suite workflow, the integration between Photoshop, InDesign, Illustrator, and Acrobat means that you can take advantage of the native Photoshop image format for successful output. By the same token, converting layered Photoshop files or native Illustrator files to EPS will flatten transparency, limit functionality, and may radically change the appearance and output of such files.

Consider some of the advantages—and shortcomings—of popular image formats.

### Photoshop Native Format

Photoshop's native format (PSD) offers a number of significant advantages for designers:

- An unlimited number of layers.
- Layer masks for nondestructive masking.
- Adjustment layers for nondestructive color correction and special effects.
- Opacity controls.
- Blending modes that allow color interaction between layers.
- Special effects such as drop shadows and embossing.

- Spot-color support.
- Vector-drawing capabilities.
- Clipping paths and vector masks for silhouetting objects.
- Importing 3D content from CAD programs.
- Editing and painting directly on 3D layers.

Photoshop PSD files support CMYK, RGB, and Lab color spaces, as well as grayscale, multi-channel, and multitone (duotone, tritone, etc.). All of these aspects of PSD files remain intact when Photoshop files are placed into Illustrator or InDesign documents, with the exception of blending modes. While opacity attributes of a Photoshop file are honored by Illustrator and InDesign, blending modes are not. See the “Photoshop Blending Mode Issue” topic in the InDesign chapter of this document for more information on the issue and how to work around it in InDesign.

Current versions of InDesign and Illustrator support layered PSD files, so there is no need to flatten layers for output. Because InDesign allows overrides to Photoshop layer visibility with Object Layer Overrides, flattening an image whose appearance is managed by InDesign would result in incorrect output. If you are concerned about storing large Photoshop files, note that, pixel-for-pixel, a Photoshop file usually takes up less space on disk than an equivalent TIFF or EPS file. Certainly, a large, complex file with many layers will result in a larger file size, but consider it a fair trade-off for the flexibility such a file provides. If a customer's file contains unused, hidden layers, consult with the customer before deleting such layers to reduce file size. If the file is used in an InDesign document, determine whether those layers are rendered visible by Object Layer Options or required for alternate versions of the image on another part of the job.

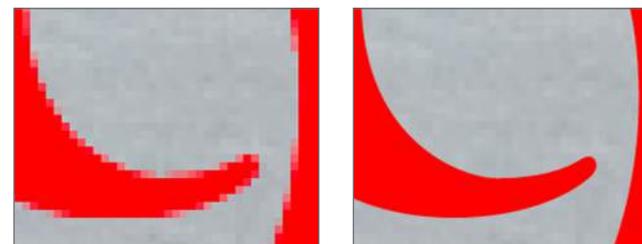
### Vector content in Photoshop images

While most Photoshop images are composed solely of pixels, Photoshop also supports the inclusion of vector information. Vector

text, vector-based Shape layers, vector masks, and Smart Objects can coexist with pixels in a Photoshop file. Such content remains editable throughout the life of the image; text can be edited with the Type tool, and vector shapes can be edited with the Pen and selection tools. Since such content has no inherent resolution, it can be scaled and rotated within Photoshop without losing fidelity. However, some special handling is required to ensure that such content prints as intended.

**Text:** The Horizontal and Vertical Type tools are used to create vector text in Photoshop. Like text in Illustrator or InDesign, such text is fully editable—content, color, size, and spacing can be changed at any time, provided that the text remains true text. If the text is rasterized (Layer > Rasterize > Type), the text becomes pixels and such editability is lost. Note that the Type Mask tools do not create vector text; they let you type pixel-based characters that instantly become active selections.

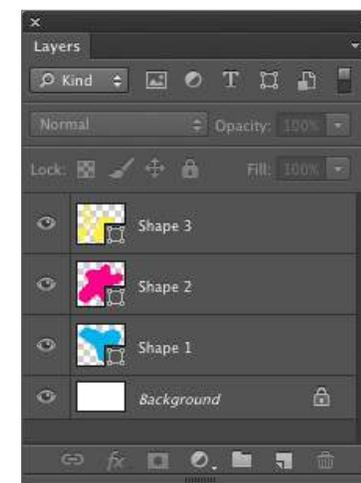
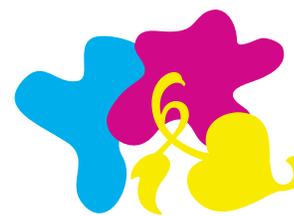
The appearance of vector text in Photoshop is a bit misleading; even though the text is clearly not pixels—it's fully editable—it appears rasterized. If the image is printed directly from Photoshop, the edges of text will be defined at the resolution of the underlying image, unless the image is printed to a PostScript printer and Include Vector Data is checked in the print dialog. (Text will be rasterized if the image is printed to a non-PostScript device, such as an inkjet printer, even if Include Vector Data is checked.) If a Photoshop .psd file containing text is placed into Illustrator or InDesign, the text will image at the resolution of the placed image. However, if the file is saved as a Photoshop PDF, the text in the image will print as true, crisp text—not pixels—if the Photoshop PDF is placed in Illustrator or InDesign, because the fonts are embedded in the PDF (something not possible in a .psd file).



### Text and Vector content in Photoshop

Viewed in Photoshop (left), the text appears rasterized. It will image as pixels if printed directly from Photoshop, unless Include Vector Data is checked in the print dialog (and the printer is a PostScript device). If the file is saved as a Photoshop PDF (right), text and vector components are crisp when viewed in Acrobat, and when printed.

- **Shape Layers:** To create a Shape Layer, choose a vector drawing tool, such as the Pen tool, set the paths behavior in the Options bar to Shape Layer, and select a foreground color. Use the Pen tools and the geometric tools (Rectangle, Ellipse, Custom Shape tool, and so on) to create what are essentially vector masks for a layer filled with color. The vector shapes can be edited with the selection tools and modified with the Add/Delete Anchor Point tools. The rules for imaging Shape Layers are the same as for vector text: to ensure crisp, vector edges, save the file as a Photoshop PDF.



### Shape Layers

Shape Layers are essentially sheets of color with vector masks. This image has three shape layers; each Shape Layer consists of a color component and a vector mask component, which can be edited independently.

**Vector Masks:** Very similar to Layer Masks, Vector Masks are created with vector tools such as the Pen tool and Shape tools. After a vector shape is created, the user chooses Layer > Vector Mask > Current Path. The selected path is then used as a vector silhouette for the layer, much like a clipping path. As with text and Shape Layers, images with Vector Masks should be saved as Photoshop PDFs to retain a crisp, vector edge when placed in other applications, such as InDesign or Illustrator.

**Smart Objects:** Vector art placed as a Smart Object in a Photoshop image receives special handling. While it displays as pixels, the source vector art is embedded within the Photoshop file as vector. If a Smart Object is scaled in Photoshop, the content is re-rendered from the embedded vector information. Thus, no fidelity is lost from interpolation during cumulative transformations. Raster art can also be designated as a Smart Object, with the same benefits. But vector Smart Objects differ in an important way from the vector components discussed earlier: Smart Objects display and image as pixels, regardless of how the file is saved. That is, saving as a Photoshop PDF does *not* result in sharp vector edges; Smart Object content is rendered at the resolution of the image.

Smart Objects do not retain any link to the original file; thus, any edits performed to the original file won't be reflected in the Smart Object embedded in the Photoshop image. The Smart Object data is part of the Photoshop file with no external links.

To edit a Smart Object, double-click its thumbnail in the Layers palette. If the Smart Object is vector, Illustrator CS6 will launch, and the vector art will open as an Illustrator file. Edit as necessary, then choose File > Save; the edited data will be written back into the Photoshop file, and the Smart Object will be updated accordingly. If the Smart Object is a pixel image, double-clicking will open the image data in Photoshop for editing and will write the corrected image data back into the parent image when saved. Note that Camera Raw images can be placed as Smart Objects, and double-clicking to edit will call up the Camera Raw interface. Vector Smart Objects can be endlessly transformed without

losing data (because each transform is re-rendered from the embedded vector data), but raster Smart Objects are subject to some of the same restrictions as any raster image:

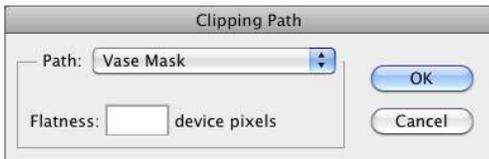
- Rotating the Smart Object will cause some loss of detail, although subsequent rotations are each re-rendered from the original pixel data; thus, the transformations are not cumulative.
- Scaling down does not destroy data, although the reduced image will display less detail because of reduced size; scale the Smart Object back up to its original size, and the original data is re-rendered without additional interpolation.
- Scaling up a raster Smart Object past its original size requires interpolation, with a resulting loss of detail. However, Smart Objects offer the advantage of re-rendering the image data fresh with each transformation, rather than causing cumulative data loss with multiple transformations.

## Clipping paths

One common method for silhouetting an object in Photoshop is to draw a vector path with the Pen tool. Traditionally, it was necessary to designate the path as an official clipping path (by choosing Clipping Path from the Paths palette menu), and then save the file as a Photoshop EPS. This is still viable, although it's no longer necessary to designate a path as a clipping path if the image will be used in InDesign, which provides options for using any saved path within a Photoshop PSD or TIFF file. Saved "regular" paths offer more flexibility than clipping paths; the user can choose from multiple saved paths for multiple uses of a single image—with different appearance—by changing the use of clipping paths within a page layout. Such paths can also be edited in InDesign; the original path is unchanged, but a user-modified instance of the path is used by InDesign to customize the silhouette. Such flexibility is limited for clipping paths; InDesign can modify the path to trim out visible parts of the image, but cannot reveal anything that falls outside the clipping path. A regular Photoshop path

(not designated as a clipping path) doesn't have such a limitation; it can be freely edited, to hide or reveal any part of the image.

Flatness, expressed in device resolution pixels, governs how a device interprets curved vector paths, using tiny, straight segments. The lower the flatness value, the more straight segments are used to draw the curved path, and thus render it more faithfully. The higher the number of straight segments that must be generated when imaging the curve, the more processing power is required. But it's not necessary (or advisable) for you to make a decision about appropriate flatness settings for clipping paths. When designating a path as a clipping path, leave the field blank: the output device will use its own optimum flatness setting to image curved paths without unnecessary processing.



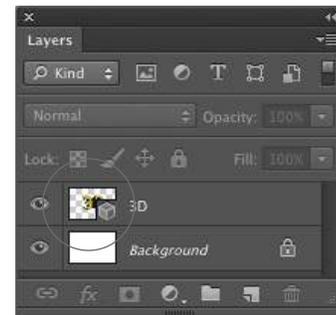
### Path Flatness

Leave the Flatness field blank, to allow the final output device to determine optimum flatness for curved paths.

### 3D content

Photoshop CS6 Extended offers features targeted to engineering, architectural, scientific, and medical users. While these users may not seem to be your primary customers, Photoshop images containing three-dimensional (3D) and video content may be part of many types of work. The ability to interpret CAD data and produce a 3D rendering in Photoshop allows product designers to generate photographic product renderings before products are manufactured.

The 3D features provide options for assigning textures, adding lights, and rendering the content using ray-tracing techniques that create realistic shadows and reflections.

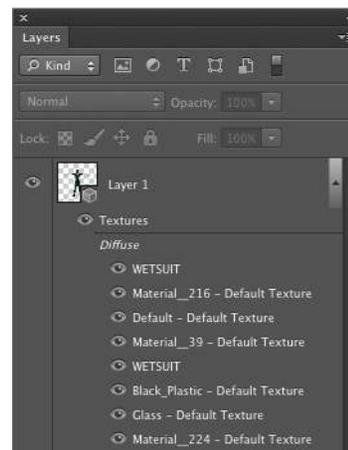


### Transforming Content Into 3-Dimensional Objects

Text and other floating layers can be extruded and bent into 3-dimensional content, which can be rotated in space and rendered with realistic shadows and reflections. An extruded cube icon marks a 3D layer (far right).

To edit an object created with the 3D function, simply select the 3D layer. To render, choose Render from the 3D menu.

Images containing translated data from CAD programs have limited editability, since most of the attributes of objects come from the originating application. Objects can be rotated, moved, scaled, and distorted. The visibility of texture layers can be controlled. Double-click on a texture layer to open it as a separate image in Photoshop, edit it, then use File > Save to write the edited data back into the parent file.



### 3D Content

The 3D cube icon identifies Layer 1 as special 3D content translated from CAD data. The texture sublayer WETSUIT can be edited, but new texture layers cannot be added.

Photoshop images containing 3D content should not present any problems in imaging and print; when placed into Illustrator or InDesign files, they are interpreted as any other Photoshop file. Although not vector objects, 3D objects share one advantage with Smart Objects: scaling the object within the image, or enlarging the image in Photoshop, reinterprets the 3D data and generates a new rendering of the object, so detail is not lost. Consequently, if a Photoshop file containing a 3D object is too small (or of insufficient resolution), scaling the object in Photoshop will produce better results than you'd achieve with a normal photograph. If you need to scale up an image containing 3D content, you'll achieve better results by scaling the image in Photoshop, rather than enlarging it in Illustrator or InDesign. Note, however, that patterns or textures applied to the surface of 3D objects are pixel-based and will lose detail accordingly. To clarify, the edges and details of a 3D object don't lose detail when scaled, but any textures applied to the object will be scaled as any "regular" photographic data would be.

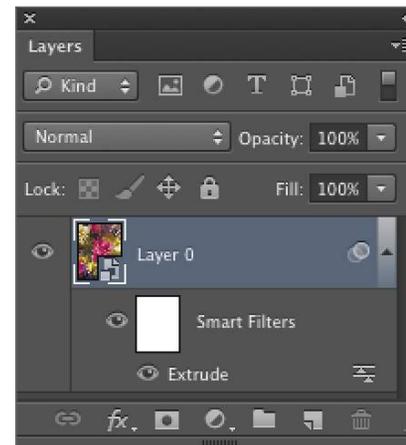
To edit 3D objects, double-click the object or one of its textures in the Layers panel. To edit a texture, double-click the name of the texture in the Layers palette. The texture opens as a separate image in Photoshop. You can perform any edits, including color correction, distortion, painting, and adding new layers—even text layers. Choose File > Save to write the edited image is written back into the 3D file, updating its appearance, or just click back in the parent file. You can also paint directly on a 3D object.

Converting images containing 3D content to CMYK will flatten all 3D content; editability will be lost as a result.

## Smart filters

In previous versions of Photoshop, filter effects, such as artistic watercolor and stained glass effects, caused permanent changes. But the Smart Filter option in Photoshop CS6 allows such effects to be applied nondestructively. Select a layer in the Layers palette, then choose Filters > Convert for Smart Filters. Then apply filters to the

Smart Filter layer. Such filters can be reworked or deactivated without any re-interpolation of the image. Multiple filters can be applied to a layer designated as a Smart Filter layer. Each Smart Filter will have its own visibility control in the Layers palette. Note that many filters work only if the image is in RGB mode.



## Smart Filters

*Add nondestructive filter effects to a layer by using Smart Filters. Control the visibility of Smart Filter effects with the eyeball icons.*

To hide the effects of a single Smart Filter, click the eyeball icon next to the filter's name. If you need to edit a customer's Smart Filter effects, double-click the name of the applied filter in the Layers palette. The filter's dialog box will be displayed; change the parameters as desired. To hide the effects of all Smart Filters, click the eyeball icon next to the Smart Filters sublayer. If a customer supplies an image containing Smart Filters layers, keep in mind that flattening the image will remove all editability and permanently change pixels affected by Smart Filters.

## TIFF

TIFF (file extension .tif) maintains many of the same features supported by the native Photoshop format—including layers, clipping paths, spot color channels, ICC profiles, Smart Objects, and Smart Filters. TIFF files are often larger than native Photoshop files with the same layer content, but because more applications support the format, they are also more

usable outside an all-Adobe workflow. However, some non-Adobe applications may not support layered TIFF files.

## Encapsulated PostScript (EPS)

The EPS (file extension .eps) format does not support many of the features of native Photoshop files—such as layers, Smart Objects, and Smart Filters. Traditionally, the EPS format has been favored for images in which clipping paths are used to silhouette an object, or for images to be printed as multitone (duotone, tritone, and so on). If your customer has supplied EPS files, there is no advantage to re-saving them as native Photoshop files, except to save file storage space, or to take advantage of the flexibility offered by native Photoshop files. If the image will be printed to a non-PostScript printer, however, it is advisable to resave the image as TIFF or PSD, since only the preview of an EPS is rendered to a non-PostScript printer.

EPS files offer support for vector content, such as type and vector shapes; the files will print with sharp vector edges when placed in Illustrator or InDesign. However, reopening such images in Photoshop re-rasterizes them, and as a result, loses the crisp fidelity of vector content.

When saving an EPS file, note the options in the Save dialog box:

**Preview:** Creates a low-resolution image for viewing in other applications or printing to non-PostScript printers. For an EPS file that will be shared between Windows and Mac systems, choose the TIFF preview option. An 8-bit preview is color, while 1-bit previews are black and white, resembling a fax image; 8-bit previews add more to file size than 1-bit previews.

**Encoding:** Determines the way image data is delivered to a PostScript output device. Encoding options include:

- ASCII (or ASCII85): Select this option if you are printing from Windows, or if you experience printing errors with other options.

- Binary: Produces a smaller file, but some page-layout applications as well as some print spooling and network printing applications may not support images saved with this option.
- JPEG: Compresses the file by discarding image data. Control the degree of JPEG compression, from JPEG Maximum Quality (slight compression) to JPEG Low Quality (aggressive compression). Files with JPEG encoding can be printed only on Level 2 (or later) PostScript printers. Some devices do not support the printing of separated output for files using JPEG compression.

**Include Halftone Screen and Include Transfer Function:** Maintains any custom screening specification, as well as embedded curves meant to control the output values (for example, to linearize output and compensate for device behavior). Many RIPs ignore these attributes.

**Transparent Whites:** Displays white areas in bitmap EPS files as transparent.

**PostScript Color Management:** Converts file data to the color space of the target device. Do not select this option if you plan to place the image in another color-managed document. Only PostScript Level 3 printers support PostScript Color Management for CMYK images. To print a CMYK image using PostScript Color Management on a Level 2 printer, convert the image to Lab mode before saving in EPS format.

**Include Vector Data:** Preserves vector graphics (including type). However, vector data in EPS and DCS files is available only to other applications, and is rasterized if you reopen the file.

**Image Interpolation:** Applies anti-aliasing to the printed low-resolution image to improve output when printing to devices such as laser printers.

## Joint Photographic Experts Group (JPEG)

While you may regard the JPEG format (file extension .jpg) as primarily for web use, a JPEG with slight compression can be appropriate for print (provided the devices and processes in your workflow accept JPEG

images). The unattractive rectangular compression artifacts that are frequently associated with JPEG images do not appear in images compressed with Maximum quality settings in Photoshop.

That said, it's generally advisable to avoid editing JPEGs and resaving in the JPEG format because each resave involves re-compression, and data can be lost unless the level of compression is carefully chosen. It's best to save the file as a PSD or TIFF file, and then update InDesign or Illustrator files to use the new image.

Another issue with the JPEG format is that it does not offer any support for layers, spot colors, or alpha channels.

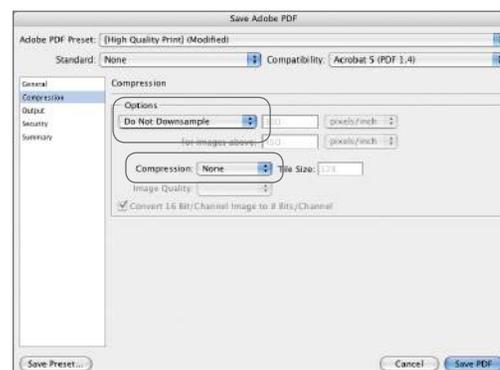
## Photoshop PDF

Photoshop (file extension .psd) files are usually created with the intention of using them in other applications, such as InDesign and Illustrator. Consequently, the best format for saving images is usually the native Photoshop (PSD) format. However, in some cases, an image is the final job, and won't be placed into another application. While Photoshop's native file format is the most flexible option, some customers may wish to submit a PDF for output.

Because it shares the same PDF libraries as all the other Creative Suite 6 components, Photoshop can save images in the same PDF formats. However, to maintain fidelity to the artist's intent and to ensure high-quality output, suggest to your customers who want to submit Photoshop PDF files that they start with one of the print-appropriate options (Press Quality, or one of the PDF/X formats), and then turn off resampling and compression. Ask the customer to avoid placing any security restrictions on the PDF file. To ensure that the image can be edited if necessary, make sure that the Preserve Photoshop Editing Capabilities option is selected.

Unless the image contains vector or text content, or you wish to submit the image for comment/review using Acrobat, saving an image as a

Photoshop PDF offers no advantage over saving the image as a Photoshop native file.



## Photoshop PDF

*To preserve vector content, start with the High Quality Print preset. Turn off Optimize for Fast Web Preview, and turn off compression and downsampling. The goal is to preserve all the original Photoshop data, but encase it in a PDF wrapper for proper rendering by other applications.*

For these types of files, instruct your customers to start with the High Quality Print PDF preset, and then modify it in the interest of image integrity.

- For **General** options, select Preserve Photoshop Editing Capabilities so the file can be reopened in Photoshop. This option does increase file size, but is required to maintain all layers and to allow future editing of vector and text content.

- Deselect **Optimize for Fast Web Preview**. While this doesn't impair content fidelity or editability, it's unnecessary in a print workflow.
- For **Compression** options, choose Do Not Downsample, and set Compression to None or use ZIP compression, to avoid any loss of data.
- Leave the **Output** and **Security** options at the default settings.

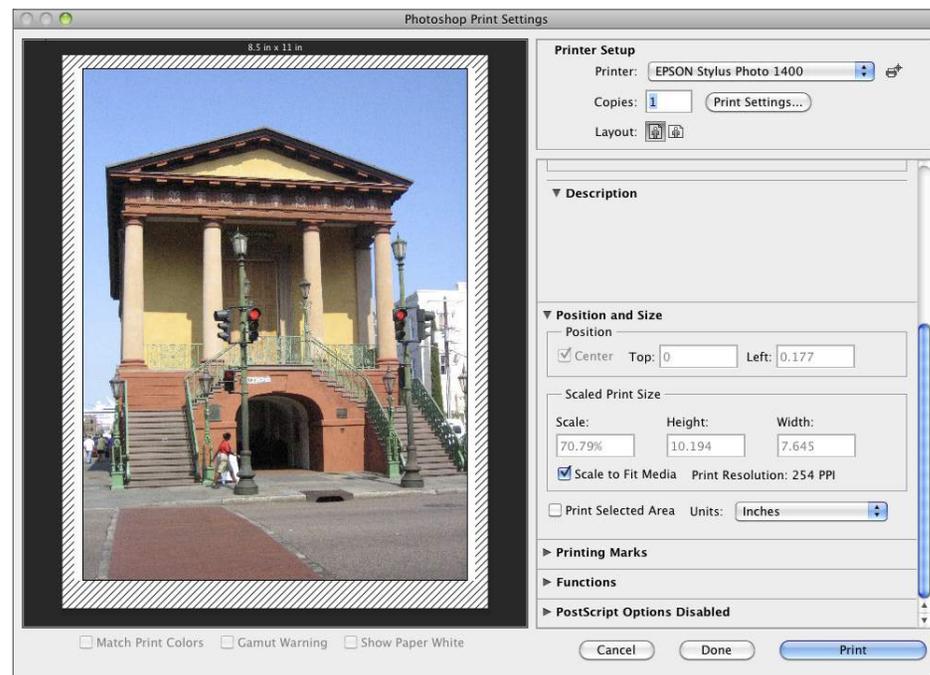
Because the saved file has a .pdf file extension, double-clicking the file to open it launches Adobe Acrobat, not Photoshop. Using the InDesign Edit Original function also opens the file in Acrobat. To edit such files in Photoshop instead, launch Photoshop and then choose File > Open to open the file. After editing the file in Photoshop, you then must manually update links to such files in InDesign or Illustrator.

## PRINTING FROM PHOTOSHOP

If you are printing to an inkjet printer or other RGB-based device, you will likely achieve the best results by printing from an RGB image. Despite the fact that these devices use CMYK inks (often with additional colors such as orange, green, light cyan, light magenta, etc.), are set up to maximize the wider gamut available in RGB images by converting incoming RGB information to appropriate values for the color gamut of the printing device. The colorants in inkjet inks actually allow a wider range of colors than offset inks: Printing from an image in the smaller CMYK color space limits the output. For detailed guidance, consult the user guide and online resources available from the manufacturer of the device.

Note that if you are creating an image destined to be placed in InDesign or Illustrator, it is best to place the image in the final document, create a PDF using the settings that will be used for the job, and print from Acrobat Pro.

Some of the options available when printing from Photoshop depend on the features of the target device. Choose File > Print to open the Print dialog box.



### Print Dialog Box

Choose options for position and scale of output. To reposition the image on the media, deselect the *Center Image* option and either enter coordinates in the *Top* and *Left* fields, or drag the image thumbnail in the media window at the left. For scale factor, enter a percentage value or height and width dimensions, or drag on a corner of the thumbnail. Scroll for printing marks and PostScript options.

### Options

All options are now in one mode of the Print dialog box; scroll to see all pertinent controls.

**Position and Size:** When you print to a page larger than the document's size, you can scale the image to fit the media. Photoshop allows you to do so visually, manually by height and width dimensions, or automatically to fit the media (which may be enlargement or reduction, depending on the size of the image and the size of the media).

To change the orientation of the page, click the page orientation icon below the preview area to choose Portrait or Landscape.

To scale the image visually, grab one of the handles on the image in the preview area of the Print dialog box to scale the image up or down. You cannot scale the image nonproportionally or rotate it. If you deselect the Center Image option, you can reposition the image by entering values for the Left and Right fields of the Position section or by dragging the thumbnail of the image. To center it, simply select Center Image. Photoshop calculates and displays the values that result in a centered image on the media you have chosen.

- **Printing Marks:** Your choice of output options depends on your workflow, as well as the capabilities of the target device:
- **Registration Marks:** Prints bull's-eyes and star target registration marks on the image.
- **Corner Crop Marks:** Prints crop marks at the corners of the image bounds.
- **Center Crop Marks:** Prints crosshairs at the vertical and horizontal centers of the image.
- **Description:** Prints any description text entered in the File Info dialog box, up to about 300 characters.
- **Labels:** Prints the file name above the image. If you are printing separations, the ink name for each separation is also included.
- **Emulsion Down:** Reverses the orientation of the image and is useful for film output or special effects.
- **Negative:** Inverts the entire output, including all masks and any background color. This option is useful if you are imaging directly to film or other photosensitive media. Note that this is not a color-managed conversion. If this is a common workflow for you, create a custom color profile that takes this conversion into consideration.
- **Background:** Lets you select a background color that will be printed on the page outside the image area. Click the Background button, and then select a color from the color picker. (This option affects only output, and leaves the image unchanged.)

- **Border:** Prints a black border of the specified width at the edge of the image.
- **Bleed:** Prints crop marks inside rather than outside the image. Use this option to trim the image within the graphic rather than at the edge.
- **Calibration Bars:** Adds an 11-step grayscale wedge from 0 to 100%, in 10% increments, if the target printer is a PostScript device and if there is room on the media for the calibration bars.
- **Interpolation:** All PostScript printers automatically resample the input stream to match actual device resolution, and most PostScript printers apply algorithms to optimize upsampling of any low resolution image content. This option ensures that a PostScript Language Level 3 applies the best interpolation algorithm available for the image.
- **Include Vector Data:** Retains vector edges for text and other vector content when printing to a PostScript device.

## Color management

In the Color Management section, you're presented with options for color management during output.

Photoshop CS6 and Photoshop CS6 Extended include support for printing of large (>30,000 pixels) images, and support for scripting of the print process (as well as the ability to record the process, including print settings, and save as Actions).

- **Printer Manages Colors:** Photoshop sends the image data "as is," and the target device uses its built-in default color rendering. You can choose an option from the Rendering Intent pop-up menu, but most non-PostScript printers use Perceptual intent and ignore any other choice you might make here. If flesh tones have a greenish cast when printed, this may be a sign that color management in the printer is turned off. Note that, on Windows, using Printer Manages Colors will compress the gamut of images to sRGB color space when printing, which may produce less-vivid colors when printing to a wide-gamut device.

- **Photoshop Manages Colors:** When this option is selected, you can choose a target printer profile and a rendering intent. The ideal target profile is a custom profile built for your device, but if you don't have a custom profile, choose the canned profile that matches your device and media. (These profiles are often installed when the printer driver is installed, but you may have to obtain them from the vendor.) It's very important to avoid "double color management" when using this option; make sure that you turn off any color compensation at the printer (address this in the print driver dialog box, which appears when you click the Print Settings button in the Print dialog box). If fleshtones print with a heavy red cast, this is a sign that both Photoshop and the printer are performing color management; disable it at the printer to allow only Photoshop's color management to affect output. Consult your printer documentation for specifics.
- With many newer printer drivers, when Photoshop manages colors, the drivers will set the defaults within the driver settings accordingly, for optimum output. There are three options underneath the Preview window that are only available when "Photoshop Manages Colors" is selected:
  - **Match Print Colors:** Changes the image colors in the Preview area to match the output with current settings.
  - **Gamut Warning:** (Enabled when *Match Print Colors* is selected) highlights out-of-gamut colors in the preview, based on the selected printer profile.
  - **Show Paper White:** Select for more accurate print preview when you're printing on off-white paper (such as fancy stock or news-print)

- **Separations:** To print a separate sheet of media for cyan, magenta, yellow, and black plates as well as any spot color component (such as spot colors in duotone images), choose Separations, and turn off color management at the printer. Photoshop displays an alert underneath the Color Handling pop-up menu, asking "Did you disable color management in the printer dialog box?" (Separations are not available for RGB or grayscale images, but are available for CMYK and multi-channel images.)
- **NOTE:** The "No Color Management" option has been removed in Photoshop CS6 and CS6 Extended.

For more information, see [http://www.adobe.com/go/ps\\_support](http://www.adobe.com/go/ps_support). To search, type appropriate terms in the Search For field, select other Search options, and then click the Search button.

# Chapter 4: Adobe Illustrator CS6

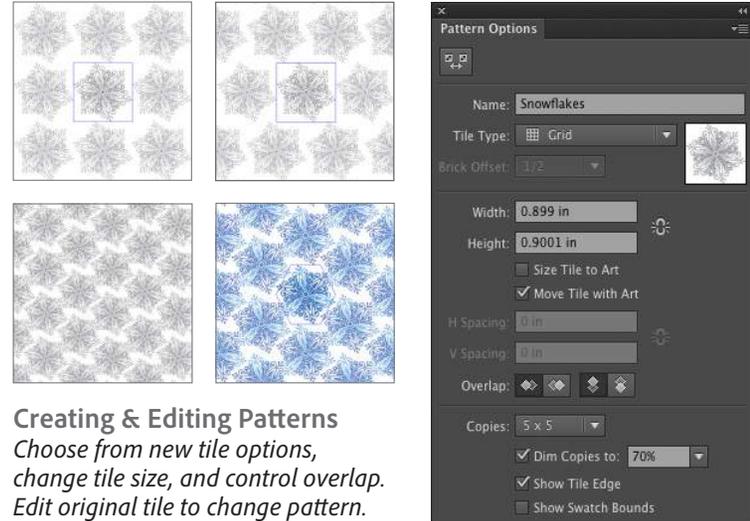
Over its product life, Adobe Illustrator has evolved from a sturdy vector-drawing program for creating logos and illustrations to a full-featured creative environment with painterly brushes, soft-edged effects, and 3-dimensional design tools. Illustrator is used predominantly to create artwork that will be placed into another application, such as InDesign, but many artists work exclusively in Illustrator to create final artwork, especially in packaging environments. Illustrator files can be saved as native Illustrator (AI) files, PDF files, FXG (Flash XML Graphics), SVG (Scalable Vector Graphics), or EPS files, and can be exported to other formats, including TIFF and Flash (SWF) formats.

Each new version brings enhancements that provide design functionality far beyond the original, basic vector-drawing capabilities of Illustrator. As your customers begin to use the more advanced features of Illustrator, it is helpful for you to know how to ensure that their files will print as expected. Illustrator CS6 offers enhancements and new controls that allow you to more easily and efficiently edit customer files when necessary.

## ILLUSTRATOR CS6: NEW FEATURES

- **Mercury Performance engine:** Native 64-bit support allows you to access all of your computer's RAM, for increased speed and faster response when you are working on complex files.
- **Dockable tool strips:** You can now tear off tool groups, switch them to a compact vertical orientation, and dock next to main Tool panel.
- **New Image Trace:** The improved tracing engine offers more granular controls and smoother results.

- **Enhanced Pattern Creation:** Easily create, edit, and apply seamless repeating vector patterns with flexible new options. To create a new pattern, either drag selected vector art to the Swatches panel, or choose Object > Pattern > Make. To edit a pattern, double-click the pattern swatch in the Swatches panel.

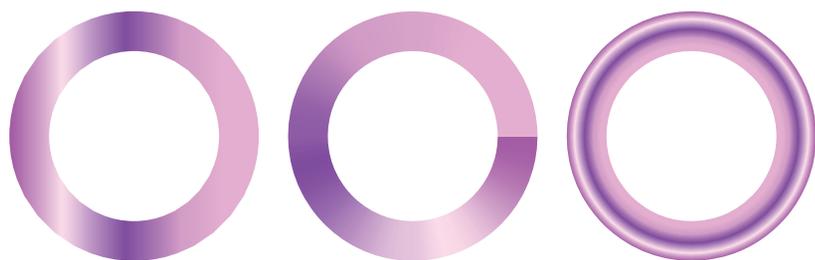


**Creating & Editing Patterns**  
*Choose from new tile options, change tile size, and control overlap. Edit original tile to change pattern.*

- **Gradients on Strokes:** You can now apply gradients to strokes; the controls are available in the Gradient panel (the Gradient tool cannot be used to change the distribution of the gradient applied to a stroke).
  - **Within Stroke:** Distributes the gradient evenly within the area of the stroke. Results resemble a filled object. The angle of the gradient can be modified by changing settings in the Gradient panel.
  - **Along Stroke:** Distributes the gradient along the length of the stroke (to avoid seeing a "break" where end colors meet, place the same color at each end of the gradient). The angle and

distribution of the gradient cannot be changed in the Gradient panel.

- **Across Stroke:** Applies the gradient perpendicular to the stroke. The angle of gradients across strokes cannot be modified in the Gradient panel.



Within Stroke

Along Stroke

Across Stroke

#### Gradients on Strokes

Use options in the Gradient panel to control the type of gradient in a stroke.

- **Interface:** The new dark interface is just the beginning; subtle refinements speed everyday tasks, including inline editing of layer and artboard names and more.

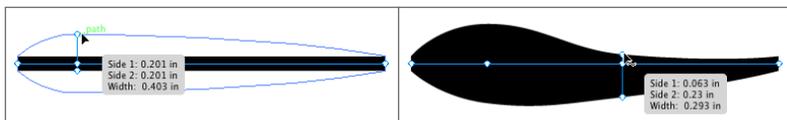


## HELPFUL EXISTING FEATURES

- **Artboard Enhancements:** Illustrator CS4 introduced the ability to create documents that contain multiple artboards within a single file. Artboards can be of different dimensions, and can even overlap each other. For example, the letterhead, envelope and business card for a client can be created within one Illustrator file. This can simplify the creation of common components such as swatches and symbols; rather than needing to duplicate such assets across multiple Illustrator files to create multiple pieces of a job, they can be contained within one Illustrator file and used on multiple artboards. The Artboard panel allows you to rearrange the list of artboards in order to control their numbering. Assign a name to a selected artboard in the Control panel, or in the Artboard panel. When an Illustrator file containing multiple artboards is saved as a PDF, a multi-page PDF is created, with each page in the PDF being the same size as the individual artboard that generated it.
- **Trim Marks and Crop Marks:** You can generate trim marks for a selected object (or for the bounding box of multiple selected objects): *Object > Create Trim Marks*. Trim marks are not grouped with the object that generated them; you should group trim marks and their parent object. Trim Marks differ slightly from the marks generated by *Effect > Crop Marks*; Trim Marks are directly editable, whereas the marks generated by the Crop Marks effect must be expanded to be editable. Both Crop Marks and Trim Marks are 0.3 pt (.004") Registration strokes, offset from the object by .25".
- **Coordinate System:** The ruler origin corresponds to the upper left corner of an artboard rather than the lower left; each artboard has its own set of rulers. You also can choose to use a global ruler system that provides coordinates across all artboards. Scripts that use the previous coordinate system will still work correctly, however.
- **Perspective Grid:** You can create 1-, 2-, or 3-point perspective grids. Using the Perspective Selection tool, you can move, scale, transform

and duplicate objects: When selected with the Perspective Selection tool, objects adhere to the active plane of the grid. Using the plane-switching widget (or keyboard shortcuts), you can adhere an object to any plane of the grid while moving it. Note: Text that is adhered to a perspective plane appears as if it has been converted to outlines, however, if you double-click on text on a perspective plane, the original text is available for editing, unless the object has been expanded. Images cannot be adhered to planes unless they are first converted to vectors with Live Trace. To view the Perspective Grid and make it active, choose View > Perspective Grid > Show Grid.

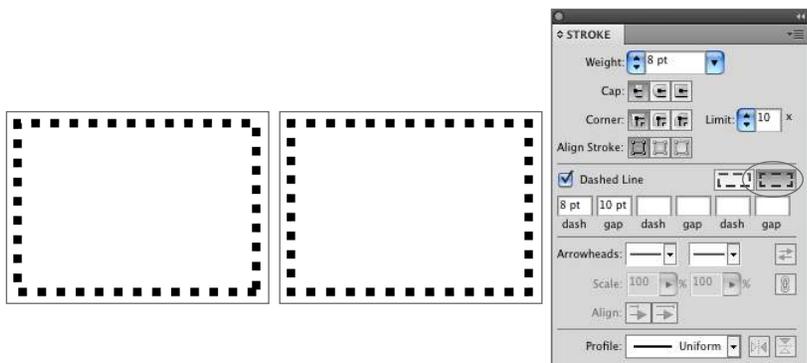
- **Variable Width Strokes:** The Width Tool () allows you to vary the thickness of a stroke symmetrically or asymmetrically. The stroke profile can be saved as a preset, and applied to multiple strokes.



### Width Tool

Drag to change the width of a stroke symmetrically. Hold down Alt (Mac: Option) to change the width in one direction.

- **Dashed Line Adjustments:** By default, the corners of objects with dashed strokes are now optimized — Illustrator modifies the dash and gap lengths subtly to perfect the corners (this is not limited to rectangles).

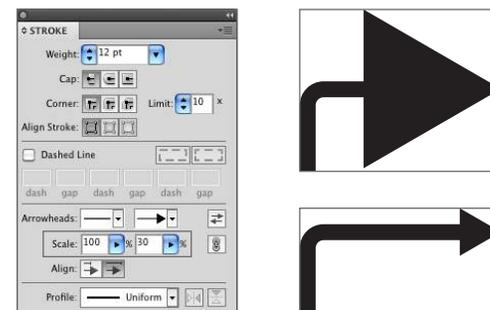


### Align Dashes to Corners and Path Ends

By default, corners and ends of dashed paths are optimized (see circled icon above). If you

wish to mimic the behavior of previous versions of Illustrator, click the Exact Gap and Dash Length icon to the left of the default choice.

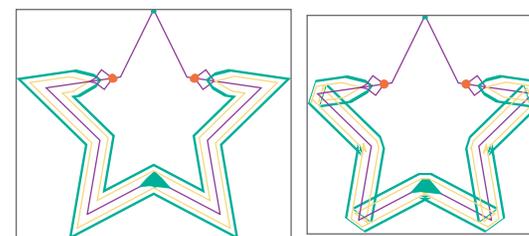
- **Precise Arrowheads:** Arrowhead controls are no longer available under the Effect menu; they are now accessed through the Stroke panel, and can now be scaled to sizes more appropriate for the stroke weight. These attributes are still effects, as in previous versions. In addition, you can choose to extend the arrow tip beyond the end of the path, or position the arrow tip so the tip is aligned with the original endpoint of the path. To remove an arrowhead, choose None from the dropdown menu. To edit further, expand the appearance of the path.



### Arrowhead Controls

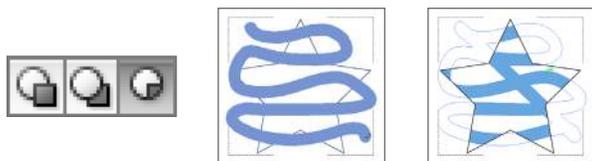
Apply and scale arrowheads and other path end decorations in the Stroke panel.

- **Stretch and Corner Control for Brushes:** You can control the distribution of art brushes along an open or closed path, as well as the overlap behavior of the artwork at corners.



- **Drawing Modes:** Select an object and enter one of three drawing modes. Draw Normal is the traditional drawing mode—new content overlays older content. *Draw Behind* will place all newly created objects directly underneath the designated object in stacking order.

*Draw Inside* turns the designated object to a clipping mask for everything created (or pasted) until you return to normal drawing mode. If objects disappear when created or pasted, check for dotted brackets around an object, indicating that it has been set to the Draw Inside mode.

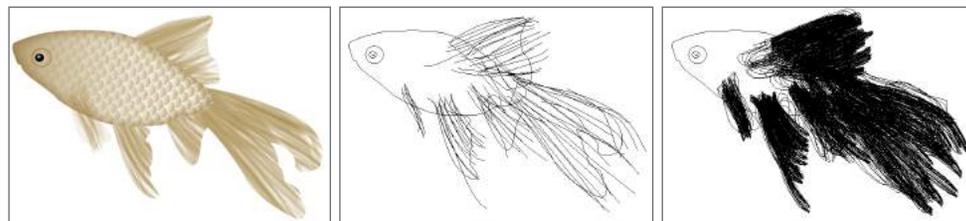


### Drawing Modes

Icons, from left: Normal mode; Draw Behind; Draw Inside.

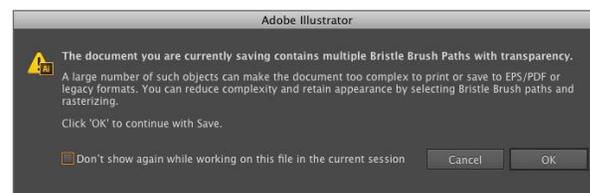
- **Shape Builder Tool:** Drag across multiple objects to combine them; similar to Pathfinder's "Unite" feature, except that the color of the combined object is based on the first object clicked.
- **Align to Pixel Grid:** To ensure that vertical and horizontal segments of vector paths are rendered crisply on the Web (rather than being softened by anti-aliasing), this option adjusts these straight-line segments, aligning them to the pixel grid.
- **Path Joining Enhancements:** Rather than trying to select the endpoints of paths you wish to join, you can just select the object you wish to close (or open objects you wish to join), and choose **Object > Path > Join**. Illustrator will join the two closest endpoints.
- **"Select Behind" Keyboard Shortcut:** Command-click (PC: Ctrl-click) to drill down through stacking order (as you can in InDesign).
- **Bristle Brushes:** This brush type creates watercolor-like strokes that use transparent components to accomplish soft color appearances. Heavy use of Bristle brushes can create complex artwork that may present some challenges in imaging. If you are using a workflow based on the Adobe PDF Print Engine, you should have little or no difficulty processing an Illustrator file containing a reasonable amount of Bristle Brush content. If you are using an older PostScript-based workflow, however, you may encounter long processing times, especially if

trapping is required. You may have to simplify some illustrations, or rasterize content by selecting the Bristle Brush strokes and choosing **Object > Rasterize**. Of course, if the file contains content that must render as a spot color, this will convert the content to the current document color mode (CMYK or RGB, depending on how the document is set up, and this may be undesirable). Consider advising your customers to be cautious when using this new feature; encourage them to submit test files so that you can determine the best method for handling the content.



### Artwork Created With Bristle Brushes

*Bristle brushes can easily create naturalistic artwork, resembling watercolor art (left). Like other brushes, Bristle Brush effects are appearances applied to strokes (shown center, in Outline mode). If Bristle Brush appearances are expanded, they may create large numbers of complex objects with blending mode and transparency attributes (far right, in Outline mode). While there is no advantage to expanding such artwork, it gives you an idea of the complexity of the outgoing print stream.*



### Bristle Brush Alert

*When you save an Illustrator file containing more than 30 Bristle Brush strokes (no matter how simple they might be), you will receive an alert that implies that you may encounter some issues if you attempt to image the file in an older workflow. This does not necessarily mean that the file will not image; it's just meant as a caution.*

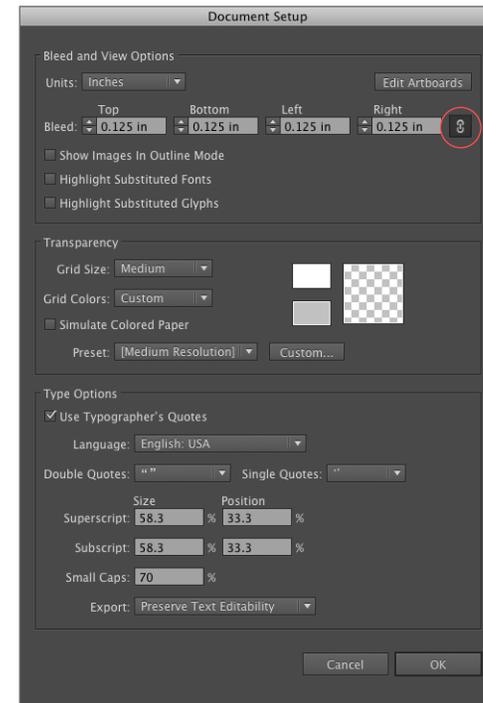
- **Separations Preview:** View individual inks in color, as well as overprint effects. Selectively show and hide individual spot and process colors to preview color separations on screen, so you can quickly and easily identify potential printing problems early in a job.

- **Bleed Support:** You can define a bleed zone of any width for a document, as in InDesign. Bleed values can be different on each side, and are applied to all artboards in the document. You cannot control bleed attributes on a per-artboard basis.
- **Isolation mode:** Work in Isolation mode with more object types, including compound paths, gradient meshes, clipping paths, opacity masks and images.
- **Alignment to a key object:** Select several objects, then click on one of the objects to earmark it as the key object. The selection edge of the key object becomes highlighted, and alignment or distribution of other selected objects will now be in reference to the key object.
- **Transparency in Gradients:** You can specify opacity for color stops on a gradient, in addition to applying color.
- **Appearance panel:** You can perform many operations directly in the Appearance panel without invoking menus or other panels. Select individual Appearance components in the panel, and alter the options.

## Bleed

You can specify a bleed area that is recognized when printing and exporting an Illustrator file, in much the same way as you can in InDesign. You can snap objects to the bleed lines. To turn off the view of bleed guide lines, choose **View > Guides > Hide Guides**.

To create a defined bleed, you can specify a bleed value when creating a new document, or add it to an open document. To add bleed to an existing document, choose **File > Document Setup** and enter the appropriate amount for bleed. By default, all bleed values are linked; changing one value changes them all. But you can unlink the bleed fields and specify a different value for each side of the artboard. In files with multiple artboards, all artboards will have the same bleed value.



### Setting Bleed Value

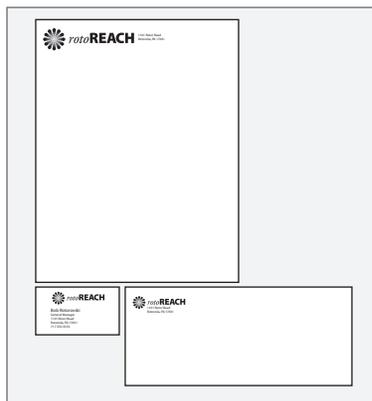
*The bleed fields are linked; enter a value in any field, and all fields are automatically updated. To specify different bleed amounts per side, click the chain icon (circled) to unlink the fields, and then enter the values in individual fields.*

In Print and Save as PDF dialogs, be sure to check the option to Use Document Bleed Settings under the Marks and Bleed topic. Note that if you check this setting, but have not specified a bleed zone for the document, no bleed is generated; only artwork within the artboard trim area is printed or retained in the resulting PDF. If you have not specified a bleed zone, you can manually enter a bleed value when saving as PDF or when printing, and correct bleed will be included.

## WORKING WITH MULTIPLE ARTBOARDS

Multiple Artboards allow the user to create multiple individual drawing areas within a single document. While this does not mean that Illustrator is a page layout application (for example, there is no provision for master pages or automatic page numbering, as in InDesign), it

provides the ability to hold multiple assets within one file. Artboards can be of any size, and can even overlap each other, provided they fit within the boundaries of Illustrator's maximum canvas, which is limited to 227.54 inches on each side. For example, all the collateral artwork for a client — the letterhead, business card, and envelope — can be contained within a single Illustrator file.



### Multiple Artboards

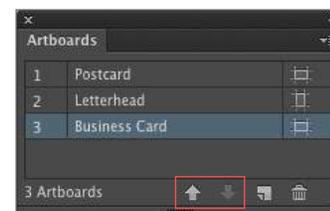
*Extend the flexibility of Illustrator files with multiple Artboards. Each artboard can be resized, printed separately, and exported to separate pages of a multi-page PDF.*

An artboard is not an object; it is a defined drawing area within the overall Illustrator canvas, which can be addressed directly. Artboards can be created, modified, and repositioned with the Artboard tool () . To create a new artboard, select the Artboard tool, and drag a rectangle on the canvas, or click on an object to create a new artboard aligned with the object's bounding box. Press the Enter key (Mac: Return) to open the Artboard Options dialog, where you can specify exact dimensions for the artboard. You can also select an existing rectangle and choose Object > Convert to Artboard, or duplicate an existing

artboard by selecting it with the Artboard tool, and then Option/Alt-dragging to a new area of the canvas. To create an artboard within an existing artboard, hold down the Shift key while dragging with the Artboard Tool. To resize an artboard to selected artwork, choose Object > Artboards > Fit to Selected Art. To resize an artboard to encompass all artwork, choose Object > Artboards > Fit to Artwork Bounds. To modify the dimensions of an artboard, select it with the Artboard tool and press the Enter/Return key to open the Artboard Options dialog, or just enter the new dimensions in the Control panel.

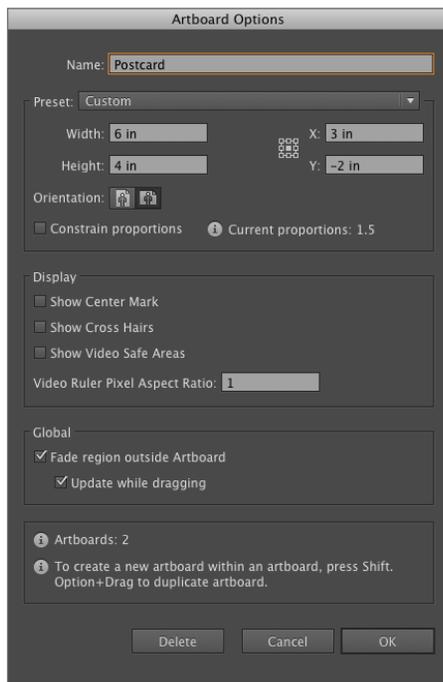
### Using the Artboards Panel

By default, artboards are identified by non-printing numbers, according to the order in which they are created. If you wish to change the order of artboards (for example, to ensure that they will appear in the desired order when the Illustrator file is saved as a PDF), use the Artboards panel to rearrange them. You can use the up/down arrows on the bottom of the panel to change the order of artboards, or simply drag a listed artboard up and down. To rename an artboard, double-click its name in the Artboard panel.



### Reordering Artboards

*To change the order of artboards, either use the up/down icons at the bottom of the Artboards panel, or just drag the entry up or down. Double-click an artboard name to change it.*



### Artboard Options

Specify dimensions, proportions and position for an artboard, as well as the display options for center mark and crosshairs.

### Moving Artwork With an Artboard

By default, if you reposition or duplicate (by Alt/Option-dragging) an artboard with the Artboard tool, any artwork within (or overlapping) the artboard will move along with it. If you wish to change this behavior so you can move an artboard without moving any artwork, click the Move/Copy Artwork with Artboard icon (📄) in the Control panel. You may wish to toggle the setting back to the default behavior once you're done, to avoid inadvertently altering the relationship of an artboard to artwork in future files.

Artwork moves with Artboard



Artwork does NOT move with Artboard



### Controlling the Relationship Between Artwork and Artboard

By default, artwork moves with any artboard it touches. This icon in the Control panel toggles that behavior on and off.

To delete an artboard, select it with the Artboard tool and press the Delete or Backspace key. Only the artboard itself is deleted; any artwork remains. However, any artwork which falls outside any remaining artboard will not be included when you save as PDF or print the file.

## WORKING WITH TEXT FROM PREVIOUS VERSIONS OF ILLUSTRATOR

Illustrator CS6 can open a file created by any previous version of Illustrator; however, you should be cautious about opening files created by versions prior to Illustrator CS, if they contain live text. The text composition engine was revamped for Illustrator CS, and live text from previous versions may rewrap or leading may change when a file is opened in Illustrator CS or later. Opening Illustrator CS and later files in Illustrator CS6 should not cause text reflow. If text has been converted to outlines or if the file consists only of vector shapes and placed images (with no live text), opening older files in Illustrator CS6 should present no problems; changes in text composition do not affect purely vector content. And, since fonts are embedded in Illustrator native files and EPSs for only purposes of display and print, you must have the correct font active on your computer to edit text.

You may also find that text that was created as Area type has been converted to Point text; changing the dimensions of the bounding box will distort the text.



### Opening Legacy Files

Because Illustrator CS revised the text composition engine, this alert appears when you open files created in versions of Illustrator prior to CS. It is recommended that you click OK.

You are presented with three choices: Update, Cancel, and OK. Adobe recommends that you don't click the Update button in this alert; text may reflow, but you won't have the opportunity to view "before and after" to judge if the reflow has caused problems. Clicking Cancel prevents the file from opening. Clicking OK allows you to open the file, and leaves the text unchanged. You will be able to update text once the file is open, with the added advantage of being able to check the status of the text before and after the update.

Once the file is open in Illustrator CS6, another alert appears when you attempt to edit legacy text. You are given three choices: Copy Text Object, Cancel, and Update. If you click Update, the text becomes live text, and is composed according to the rules in Illustrator CS6. This may result in changed line-spacing or text reflow. Although the changes may not be immediately apparent, you risk making changes that your customer does not want. Thus, it is recommended that you do not click the Update button in this alert. Choosing Cancel just stops the editing process without altering the text; nothing happens. The recommended choice is Copy Text Object. Illustrator then creates a ghosted version of the untouched text in a locked sublayer named Legacy Text Copy, along with a live, editable copy of the text updated by the current composition rules. Use the ghosted legacy text as a guide to modify the live text to match the customer's supplied file as closely as possible. When you have finished, either hide or delete the Legacy Text Copy to avoid inadvertent output of the guide text. If you have edited legacy text in previous versions of Illustrator, you may find that, even though text is broken into many small clumps of point text, the composition of the original text is much more faithfully preserved.

There should be no issues if you open a customer's files to edit vector content, but do not intend to modify text. In this situation, click OK in the opening alert, and avoid editing the text. Illustrator won't create the legacy text guide or change the text in any way if you do not attempt to edit it.

## SAVING FOR PREVIOUS VERSIONS

If your workflow includes editing customer files and then returning the corrected files to the customer for future use, you face an additional concern. Although Illustrator CS6 offers options for saving back to versions as old as Illustrator 3, it's important to warn your customer that edited text in such files may be converted to point text or outlines, and as a consequence text editability will be impaired or lost. Point text consists of small groups of several letters, rather than a smooth, continuous flow of text. While point text will print as intended, it is difficult to edit point text without impairing spacing and text position. Keep a copy of the file in Illustrator CS6, in case further edits are required before the end of the job.

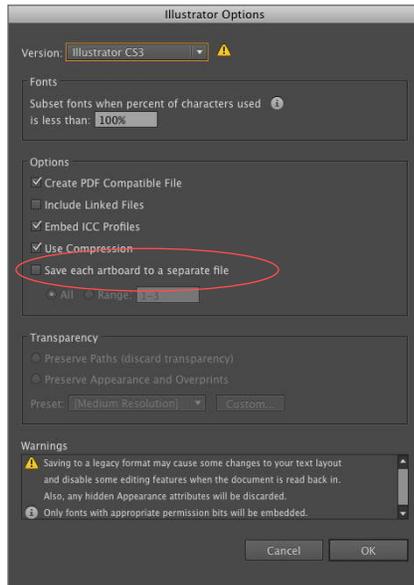
Saving Illustrator CS6 files for users of older versions can present some issues in addition to text problems. Live Effects, such as 3D objects, Image Trace objects, and Live Color objects, are converted to expanded, literal vector objects (rather than editable Live Effects) when saved for versions of Illustrator before CS2, and thus lose much of their flexible editability. Warped shapes (including text), drop shadows, and glows become raster content if saved for versions prior to Illustrator 9. When you save Illustrator files containing such effects, an alert warns you that type may be converted to point text and that the editability of some features may be lost. This applies when the file is opened in an older version of Illustrator or reopened in Illustrator CS6, because the content in the outgoing file has been permanently altered to meet the limitations of the older version. For this reason, you should save a duplicate copy of the file in the CS6 format in case further edits are required.



### Older Format Alert

*When you save an Illustrator file containing live effects to an older format, you are warned that such content won't be editable in the older version of the program.*

Note that saving an Illustrator CS6 file containing multiple artboards to a version prior to Illustrator CS4 will retain all artwork, but will contain only a single artboard, which takes on the dimensions of the largest artboard in the original document. You are given the option to save each Artboard to a separate Illustrator file. Whichever option you choose, the original multiple Artboards are not automatically restored if the backsaved file is reopened in Illustrator CS6. However, the location and dimensions of artboards are retained as rectangular guides. To restore the artboards, select a guide (or multiple guides), and then choose Object > Artboards > Convert to Artboards.



### Saving Multiple Artboards to Older Formats

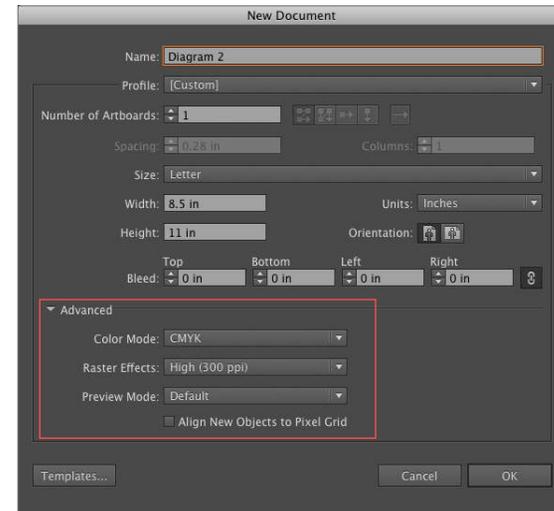
Note that multiple Artboards will be lost when saving files to older formats; you have the option to save each Artboard to a separate Illustrator file.

## DOCUMENT COLOR MODES

When creating a new document, an artist can choose from multiple document presets, intended for a variety of output options, including Print, Web, Devices, Video and Film, Basic RGB, and Flash Builder. Encourage your customers to start with the Print document setting, which automatically sets the document color mode to CMYK, and

establishes a Raster Effects setting of 300 ppi. This preset creates a letter-sized document by default, but the artist can set the document dimensions to any value, up to 227.54 x 227.54 inches. The document color mode can be changed at any point, but this may result in some unwanted changes. For example, drop shadows become four-color shadows when a document is started in RGB, but changed to CMYK after the shadows are created.

When you choose File > New to begin creating an Illustrator file, the document color mode and raster effects resolution is displayed on the right side of the dialog in the basic mode. If you click the triangle by the Advanced label, you'll see options for Color Mode, Resolution for Raster Effects, Preview Mode, and Align to Pixel Grid.



### New Document Options

Click the Advanced triangle to reveal additional options, including the Preview mode and Align to Pixel Grid option.

The default settings create a CMYK file, but if the color mode has been set to RGB, the changed settings may be easily overlooked during document creation. Note: In an RGB document, even if the color sliders are set to CMYK when choosing a color, an RGB color is created. The document color mode can be changed from RGB to CMYK, but some issues must be corrected in the converted file. Spot-color swatches

retain the correct spot-color definition after conversion, and all other content is converted to CMYK, using the current color management settings. Any black content specified as R0-G0-B0 or 100% black is converted according to the color settings currently in effect; unless you are using a maximum GCR setting, such content will be converted to a four-color black when the file is converted to CMYK. This content should usually be converted to 100% black for correct output.

## Proof setup

You can display an on screen preview of how your document's colors will look when reproduced on a particular output device. Keep in mind that the reliability of the soft proof depends upon the quality of your monitor, the accuracy of your monitor calibration, the fidelity of your monitor and output devices, and the ambient lighting conditions of your work environment. Soft-proofing mimics the appearance of printing colors on screen, but does not represent the appearance of blending modes or overprint; for that, you must turn on Overprint Preview (View > Overprint Preview).

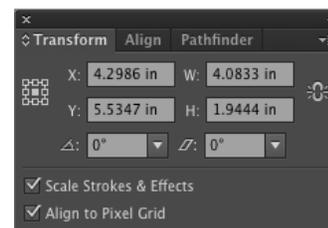
To soft-proof colors on screen:

1. Choose View > Proof Setup, and do one of the following:
  - Choose a preset that corresponds to the output condition you want to simulate. The default choice depends on the color settings currently in effect.
  - Choose Customize to choose or create a custom proof setup for a specific output device. If you have a custom profile for the output device (for example, a proofing device or a printing press), this option provides the most accurate preview of output. Choose View > Proof Colors to activate the soft-proof display. You can toggle Proof Colors on and off by re-selecting the option. When soft proofing is on, the Proof Colors command displays a check mark, and the name of the proof preset or profile appears at the top of the document window.

2. To compare the appearance of multiple presets, create a new window (Window > New Window). Using the Screen Mode control at the bottom of the Tools panel, set the application to Standard mode and arrange multiple windows side-by-side. Choose a different preset for each window by choosing View > Proof Setup, selecting a preset, and turning on Proof Colors.

## Pixel preview

If the Illustrator artwork will be exported for web or mobile-device use, you may wish to preview the outcome for optimum results. Artwork exported for these environments is rasterized at 72 ppi, which can result in loss of detail both from resampling and anti-aliasing. To preview the results of exporting for Web, choose View > Pixel Preview. If vertical or horizontal lines are inconsistent because of anti-aliasing, select those objects, and check Align to Pixel Grid in the Transform panel (Window > Transform).



### Align to Pixel Grid

*If you are preparing Illustrator files for the Web, consider taking advantage of the Align to Pixel Grid option to clean up vertical and horizontal edges. Text is not affected by this setting unless it is converted to outlines.*

Pixel Preview does not help you judge how Illustrator artwork will look when exported to image formats such as TIFF or PNG, since you control those results with your choices in the export settings.

## LIVE EFFECTS

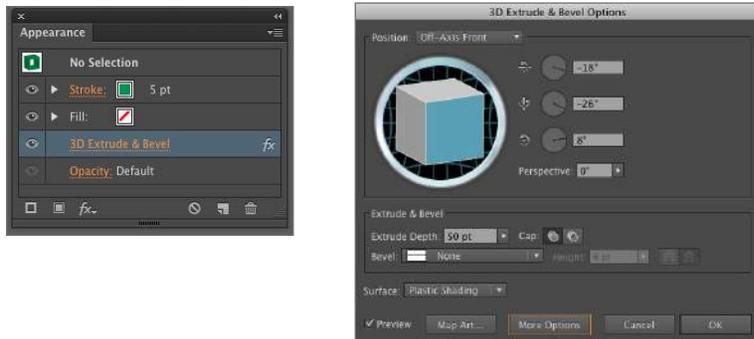
Live Effects, such as 3D effects, glows, and distortions such as Scribble and Zig Zag, change the visual appearance of objects, but they do not permanently alter the underlying artwork. Consequently, Live Effects are continuously editable, provided the file is not saved in a format that

does not allow editability, such as older Illustrator formats (prior to CS). It is not necessary to expand live effects prior to printing; doing so restricts editing, and may increase file size unnecessarily. Unless you need to tweak individual aspects of the objects, leave the Live Effects intact.

While most Live Effects preserve spot color content, SVG Filters (Effect > SVG Filters) convert spot-color content to the color mode of the document (either CMYK or RGB). All Effects (including SVG filters) can be modified or deleted via the Appearance panel (Window > Appearance).

### 3D Objects

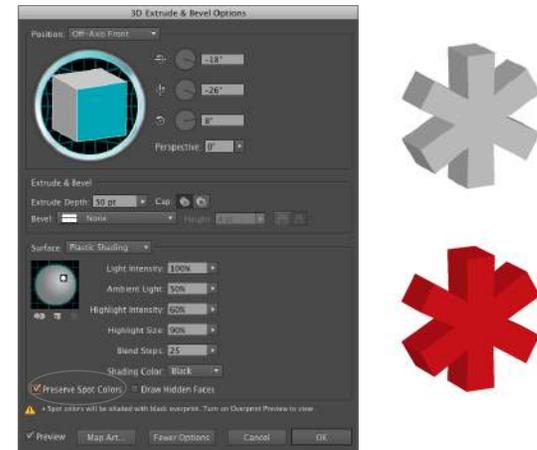
Illustrator creates the visual effect of three-dimensional depth by applying transformations and shading to vector objects. The 3D objects created by the 3D Effects feature can be rotated in the 3D function dialog box, and the depth, lighting, and perspective of objects can be repeatedly edited. To create 3D effects, select an object and choose Effect > 3D and then select one of the options: Extrude & Bevel, Revolve, or Rotate. To *edit* existing 3D effects, however, do *not* choose the 3D option again from the Effect menu. Instead, double-click the 3D entry in the Appearance panel (Window > Appearance). The 3D Options dialog box appears.



### 3D Effects

To edit existing 3D effects, double-click the 3D entry in the Appearance panel. To see additional controls in the 3D Options dialog, click the More Options button.

If the object is intended to print as four-color process, no additional measures are necessary. However, if the object uses a spot color, special handling is required to ensure that the spot color prints as intended. The option to retain spot color is hidden in the initial view of the 3D Options dialog box. To access the spot-color option, click the More Options button in the 3D dialog box. Controls for lighting and spot-color preservation are displayed at the bottom of the dialog box.



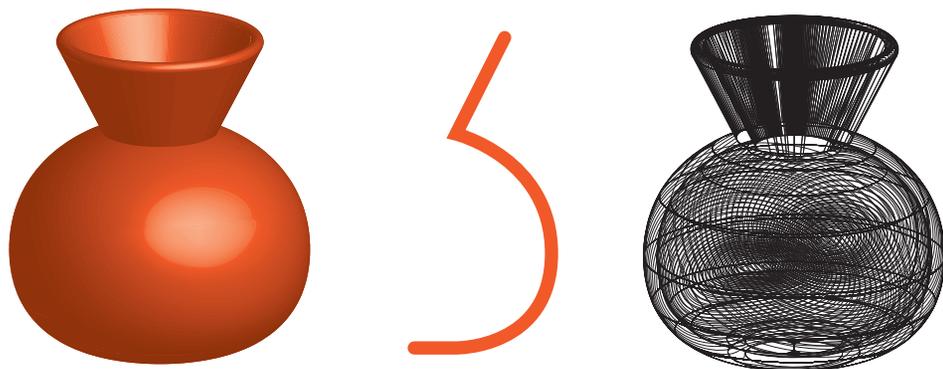
### Spot-color 3D Objects

When performing 3D operations on a spot-color object, display the additional options in the 3D dialog box for more controls. To avoid converting spot-color content to CMYK, check the Preserve Spot Colors option. At first, the object will appear as black only; for correct display, activate Overprint Preview (View > Overprint Preview). For output, Illustrator renders a spot-color 3D object as two elements—a group of black-only objects, set to overprint, and a solid object filled with the spot color. You must turn on Overprint Preview to view this effect correctly, and the output device must honor the overprint instruction to image the objects correctly.

To maintain spot-color in 3D objects, Illustrator uses overprint. Essentially, the object is replicated by two separate objects—a solid object filled with the spot color, plus a grayscale (black only) object carrying the shading and set to overprint. This arrangement will initially appear to be black only, until you turn on Overprint Preview (View > Overprint Preview). Since overprint must be processed for the object to print correctly in the spot color and black, the RIP must allow PostScript overprint to be active.

## Expanding 3D objects

A live 3D object in Illustrator is a simple cross section under the hood. While this allows you to edit the basic cross section shape (and thus the shape of the 3D object), you cannot select individual, shaded areas for editing, because they are not literal, individually editable vectors. To convert the live effects to editable vectors, expand the object (Object > Expand Appearance). The result can be a collection of very complex objects, but you gain some editability for individual components. If you must expand a 3D object, it is recommended that you work on a copy of the file, and keep an unedited original as insurance.



### Expanding Live Effects

*A live 3D object (left) is a simple cross section under the hood (center). While this allows you to edit the basic cross section shape (and thus the revolved object), you cannot select individual, shaded areas for editing, because they are not literal vectors. To convert the live effects to editable vectors (right) expand the object (Object > Expand Appearance).*

## Ensuring correct imaging of raster-based effects

Illustrator CS6 offers stylized soft-edge effects such as Drop Shadow, Feather, and Inner Glow, which are rendered as pixels during output. While these effects are live and editable, their resolution during output is governed by the Document Raster Effects setting (Effects > Document Raster Effects Settings). By default, the Raster Effects setting in Illustrator CS6 is 300 ppi when using the Print document profile, which

should be sufficient for most printing needs. However, files created in earlier versions of Illustrator (or with the Web or RGB document profile) may be set up with lower values for Raster Effects. The low resolution may not be obvious on screen, but it will be apparent in output. Because these effects are live effects, rather than literal image content, changing the Raster Effects resolution will correct the resolution of the effects: Choose Effect > Document Raster Effects Settings to specify an appropriate resolution for your output requirements.

If you need to modify effects in an Illustrator file supplied by a customer, open the Appearance panel (Window > Appearance), click the effect entry in the panel and modify the settings as necessary.

## Editing warps and envelope distortions

Illustrator CS6 offers methods for distorting text and other objects, using a feature called Envelope Distort. Select an object or text with the Selection tool, choose Object > Envelope Distort, and select from the available options:

- **Make with Warp:** Lets you choose from the 15 default Warp shapes, including Arc, Bulge, Flag, Fisheye, and others. Each Warp option offers controls over vertical and horizontal distortions.
- **Make with Mesh:** Sets the number of rows and columns, and Illustrator creates an editable mesh. Select the anchors and control handles to manipulate the distortion manually.
- **Make with Top Object:** Lets you create any shape with the geometric tools (ellipses, stars, and so on) or draw a shape (open or closed) with the Pen tool. Place the shape above the text or other object you wish to distort (higher in stacking order). Select the top object and the object you wish to distort, and Illustrator will distort the object using the top object as a guide.

AQUARIUM West

AQUARIUM West

AQUARIUM North

### Envelope Distort

Start with text, and apply a Mesh Envelope Distort effect (top). To edit the envelope itself, choose **Object > Envelope Distort > Edit Envelope** (center) and manipulate the envelope's anchor points and control handles. To edit the artwork, choose **Object > Envelope Distort > Edit Contents**, and select the contents (bottom)

### Appearance Panel

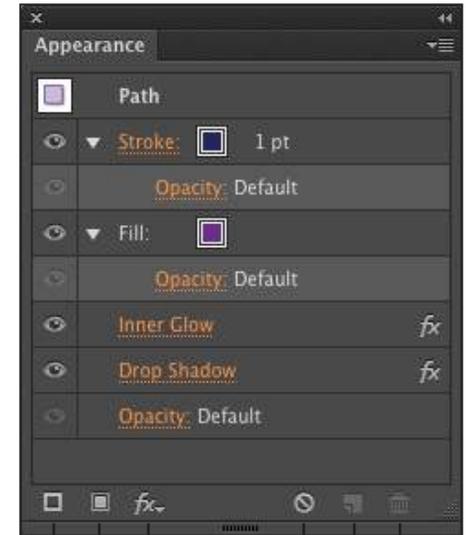
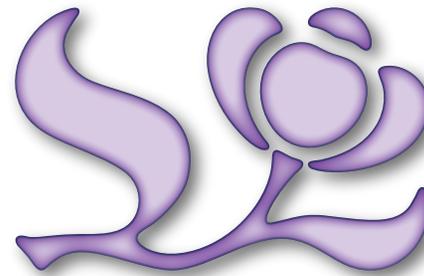
To easily determine and edit the fill, stroke, and Effects attributes of a selected object, use the Appearance panel (Window > Appearance). All attributes are listed in the panel.

For example, to change the fill color of a selected object, select its Fill attribute in the Appearance, then click the small color block indicating the Fill color. The color block changes to a pull-down panel that allows you to choose from all available Swatches in the file. To change the weight of a stroke, select the Stroke attribute in the Appearance panel. Choose a new weight from the Stroke weight pull-down that appears in the Stroke row in the Appearance panel, or type a value in the field. This approach gives you extensive control over the attributes of an object, all in one panel.

You can also add new fills and strokes more easily, by using the Appearance panel menu options Add New Fill and Add New Stroke, or

by clicking the New Stroke or New Fill icons at the bottom of the Appearance panel.

To modify an Effect, click its entry in the Appearance panel to display the dialog box for the effect. To add a new Effect, click the Add New Effect icon at the bottom of the Appearance panel to display a pull-down menu list of Effects.



Add New Stroke  
Add New Fill  
Add New Effect  
Clear Appearance  
Duplicate  
Delete

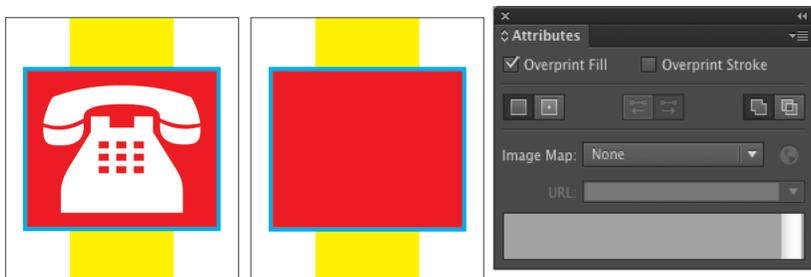
### Appearance Panel

At a glance, this panel lists effects applied to an object. To modify an Effect, click its entry in the Appearance panel, or click the hyperlink to open the appropriate panel to modify the Effect. You can also add new strokes, fills and Effects in the Appearance panel.

Strokes, fills, and effect attributes can also be reordered in the Appearance panel by dragging entries up and down in the list order. For example, the visual order of strokes can be changed so that strokes fall in front of or behind the object's fill, and the order of strokes can be changed to modify the appearance of the object.

## Using the Attributes Panel

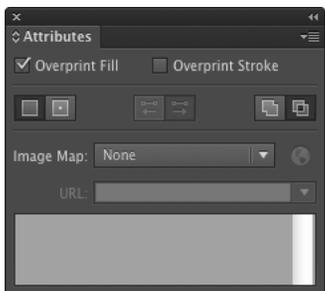
To control the overprinting attributes for the fills and strokes of objects, use the Attributes panel (Window > Attributes). Overprinting objects won't be obvious in the normal display mode in Illustrator. For this reason, you should check Illustrator files by temporarily displaying them with Overprint Preview turned on (View > Overprint Preview). Because Overprint Preview can slightly slow performance, you may want to turn it off after you have determined if there are any problems with the file.



### Attributes Panel

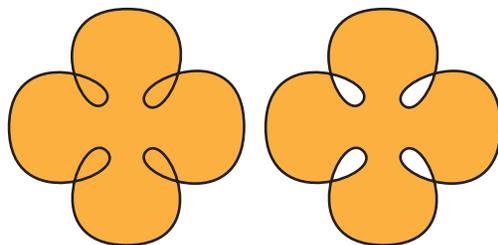
*The white telephone artwork has been set to overprint (left). This results in incorrect output (center). Deselect the Overprint Fill option in the Attributes panel (right) to correct this.*

The Attributes panel also offers options for displaying and hiding the center point of selected objects, reversing the direction of selected paths (helpful for arrowheads on the wrong end of a path), and the choice of Even/Odd fill and non-zero winding rule behavior.



### Path Attributes

*To govern the behavior in areas where a path overlaps itself, the Attributes panel gives you the choice of Non-Zero Winding Fill rule (left) or Even-Odd Fill rule (right). If you don't see these options, choose Show All from the panel menu.*



## HANDLING COMPLEX FILES

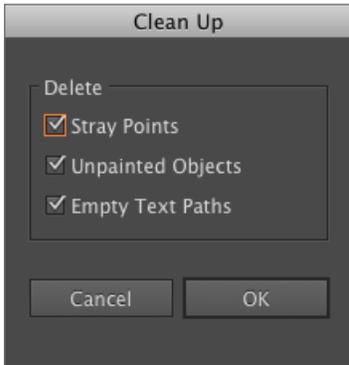
Today's RIPs are much more robust than they were just a few years ago, but at times you may still want to simplify a file for processing. An extremely complex vector file can present challenges in trapping or may result in long RIP times. At these times, consider deleting unnecessary content and simplifying unnecessarily complex objects.

### Stray points and unpainted objects

Inadvertent pen clicks can leave unwanted anchor points, which do not add substantially to the complexity of the file, but may change the bounding box of the illustration. Illustrator makes it easy to select single stray points; choose Select > Object > Stray Points. You may have to choose View > Fit in Window to see all the selected points. Press the Delete key to eliminate the stray points once they are selected.

An object that has no fill or stroke adds to the complexity of the document and should be deleted if possible. However, it may not be safe to just delete all items on the page with no fill and stroke. For example, a shape used as a mask will have no fill and stroke. However, other objects that use no fill or stroke can be deleted to simplify the document.

The easiest way to delete stray single points, empty text paths, and unpainted objects (those with no fill or stroke) is to choose Object > Path > Clean Up (you do not need to select anything in the document). This method efficiently finds and deletes unnecessary objects in the document and does not affect objects used as masks.



### Clean Up

*Delete unnecessary objects to simplify the document.*

## Hidden objects, layers, and sublayers

Objects that are completely hidden by other objects may not contribute to the final appearance of the artwork, but they still add complexity to the file. Covered objects are also processed during the generation of PostScript, adding data even though they are not visible. To reduce the complexity of the file, you may elect to delete any unnecessary hidden objects. While a few small hidden objects are not problematic, large unnecessary objects can be eliminated. To find such objects, choose **Edit > Select All**, and note any selected objects that are not visible. Then, switch to Outline view to make it easier to select and delete the hidden objects.

Objects that are not hidden behind other objects, but whose paths are set to not be visible, also contribute to file size without contributing to output. This can be a result of selecting the path and choosing **Object > Hide Selection**, or clicking the eyeball visibility icon next to a sublayer in

the Layers panel. Each sublayer represents a single path or object in the document.



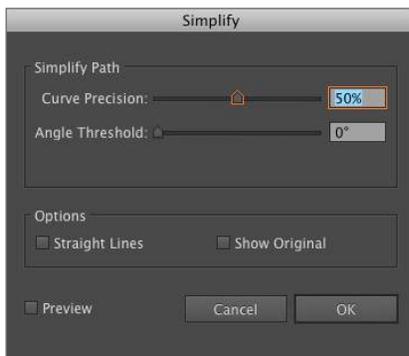
### Hidden Content

*Layers and sublayers that are not visible add to file size without contributing to output. If you are certain that they are not needed, delete them to simplify the file.*

If you want to simplify the artwork and reduce the file size by deleting nonvisible layers and sublayers, work on a copy of the customer's file for safety.

## Simplify paths

Artwork that has been generated by the Live Trace feature in Illustrator can have tens of thousands of points. If you are having difficulty processing such a complex file, the Simplify feature, if used carefully, can reduce the number of points in a complex path without visibly altering its appearance. Select the complex path, and choose **Object > Path > Simplify**. Use the options in the Simplify dialog box to balance path fidelity with its appearance. Often, reducing Curve Precision very slightly can markedly reduce the number of points without noticeably affecting the appearance of the artwork.



### Simplify Paths

*A slight reduction in curve precision can reduce path complexity without impairing the appearance of artwork.*

As with other operations that permanently alter the contents of an Illustrator file, work on a copy of the customer's file, and keep the original for safety.

## EXAMINING CUSTOMER FILES

In an ideal world, it would be best to leave customer files untouched to ensure maintaining the customer's intent. However, print requirements often dictate that you open customer files for examination or editing. For example, you may need to convert large black areas to rich black to achieve the desired appearance on press. While modifying some aspects of a file, be careful that you do not disturb other elements.

Encourage your customers to supply native Illustrator (AI) files to you, whether their final artwork will be imaged directly from Illustrator, or will be placed in an InDesign layout. There is no advantage to saving an Illustrator file in the EPS format, unless the file will be placed into an application that does not correctly process the native Illustrator AI format.

### Font embedding for display and print

By default, Illustrator embeds fonts for display and print in native (AI) and EPS files (if the font license allows embedding). This means that the

font information in an Illustrator file is available to ensure correct display and printing of the file when it is placed into other applications. For example, an Illustrator file placed into an InDesign page will print correctly, even though you may not have the fonts used by the Illustrator file. But it's important to note that the embedding is for display and print, *not* for editing. If you open a customer's Illustrator file that uses fonts that are not active on your system, you will receive a Font Problems alert.



### Missing Font

*Font information is embedded for print and display in other applications; this does not make the fonts available for editing in Illustrator if the fonts are not active on your system.*

If you proceed and open the file, you risk losing the embedded font information, rendering the file unsuitable for output. In this situation, it may be best to ask the customer to perform the necessary edits or, if the required edits do not involve the affected text, ask the customer to convert the text to outlines to avoid future font issues—permissible only if the End User Licensing Agreement (EULA) for the font allows converting to outlines.

### Linked and Embedded images

Raster images can either be embedded in an Illustrator file, or placed in an Illustrator file with an external link (as in InDesign). Each option has advantages and disadvantages:

- Linking images requires that the images be supplied in addition to the Illustrator file for proper output. Linked images can be edited in Photoshop and then updated with the Links panel in Illustrator. If you do not move the image to another directory, the link will remain current. However, if you move or rename the image, you will have to update the link in Illustrator.
- Embedding images avoids the need to send images separately, but does not provide the recipient access to the original image information for editing. Thus, if a color correction were necessary for an embedded image, the customer would have to supply the image for you to correct. You then update the image in the Illustrator file, replacing the embedded image with the corrected image. At that point, you can choose whether to embed or link the corrected image. Note that embedding an image increases the file size of the Illustrator file by approximately the amount of the image's size on disk (that is, embedding a 2 MB image increases the file size of the Illustrator file by approximately 2 MB).

If you need to edit an embedded image, and the customer cannot supply the image for editing, there is a workaround to enable you to extract the image, using the TouchUp features of Acrobat X Pro:

1. Save the Illustrator file as an Illustrator PDF, with the following settings:
  - **Adobe PDF Preset:** Illustrator Default
  - **Compression:** Do Not Downsample; No Compression
  - **Output:** No Color Conversion
2. Open the PDF in Acrobat X Pro.
3. Using the TouchUp Object tool (Tools > Advanced Editing > TouchUp Object Tool), select the image, right-click (Windows) or Control-click (Mac OS) and choose Edit Image from the context menu that appears. Adobe Photoshop opens the image for editing.

4. In Photoshop, perform the necessary edits on the image. Although the TouchUp method is intended to allow you to write an edited image back into a PDF, for this workaround you must choose Save As to save the image on disk for use in other applications. For best results, save the image as a Photoshop native (PSD) file or TIFF image.
5. Return to Illustrator. Open the Links panel (Window > Links), select the embedded image in the Links panel, and choose Re-link from the panel menu. Navigate to the corrected image, and choose Place in the dialog box. The embedded image is replaced with the corrected version of the image, and all transformations are retained. The new image will be linked to the Illustrator file, rather than embedded.

You can now discard the PDF; its only purpose was to help you capture the image at full resolution for editing.

## FORENSIC TOOLS

When you examine customer files to pinpoint issues before they can have an impact on your workflow, make it a habit to use the Illustrator tools that can help you easily find common problems.

### Overprint Preview

As mentioned in the earlier section, "Using the Attributes panel," Overprint Preview (View > Overprint Preview) can help you find overprinting problems in Illustrator files. Because Overprint Preview provides a more realistic display of transparency and blending modes, it can also help you find problems that arise from using transparency with spot-color objects. For example, a spot-color object set to Multiply with another object using the same spot color may appear to darken the underlying artwork. But, since there cannot be 200% of a single ink, the display is misleading. Turning on Overprint Preview allows Illustrator to more realistically represent final output.



### Overprint Preview

Spot-color text set to Multiply appears to darken the area where it overlaps a rectangle using the same spot color (top). But Overprint Preview provides a more realistic display (bottom). Because there cannot be 200% of the same ink (without a second plate), the overlapping area will actually not be darker when printed.

### Separations Preview

Use the Separations Preview feature to view individual plates, or to see the document in progressive mode. Choose Window > Separations Preview to open the Separations Preview Panel. Check the Overprint Preview option in the panel to activate separations display. Use the "eyeball" visibility controls next to the ink names to selectively display separations in color. (There is no provision to display a separation in black to resemble film or plate output.)



### Separations Preview

Activate Separations Preview by checking the Overprint Preview box, then selectively display the inks.

Separations Preview can enable you to easily identify problems such as unintended overprinting content, objects not overprinting that should be, rich black or Registration used inappropriately, and extraneous spot

colors. Finding such problems early in the life of a job can save money, aggravation — and deadlines.

### Flattener Preview

Use the Flattener Preview (Window > Flattener Preview) to determine how objects in the document will be affected if the file is flattened. Flattening occurs when PostScript is generated by choosing File > Print, by exporting to the Encapsulated PostScript (EPS) format, or by saving the file as a PDF compatible with Acrobat 4.0 or earlier. The Flattener's purpose is to show areas affected by transparency flattening so you can modify the file or choose another flattener preset if necessary to control flattening results before output.

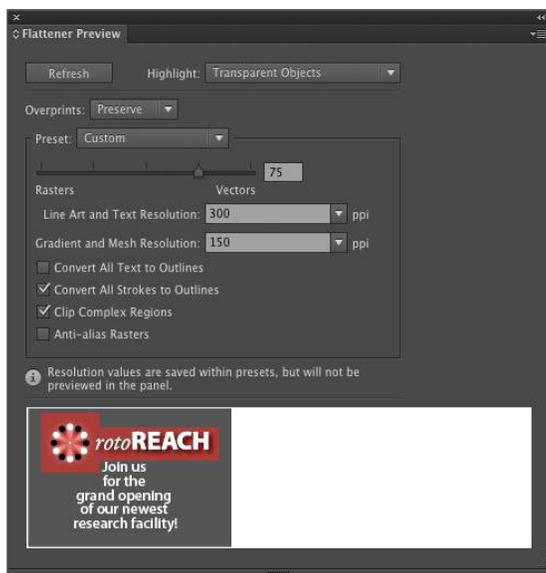
To use the Flattener Preview features:

1. Choose Window > Flattener Preview. If you don't see all options, choose Show Options from the panel menu.
2. Select a flattener preset. The default High Resolution preset is appropriate for most printing conditions, but if you have created a custom preset, choose it from the Preset pop-up menu.
3. To preview the results of using a flattener preset, click the Refresh button and select objects to highlight:
  - Rasterized Complex Regions
  - Transparent Objects
  - All Affected Objects
  - Affected Linked EPS Files
  - Expanded Patterns
  - Outlined Strokes

The options available to you depend on the preset selected. For example, if you select the High Resolution flattener preset,

Rasterized Complex Regions won't be available because the High Resolution preset does not result in rasterized regions.

4. If you choose a new preset, click Refresh to renew the display. In a very complex document, this may take a few seconds.
5. To view small details, click in the preview area at the bottom of the panel; the cursor automatically becomes a zoom tool. Hold down the spacebar to pan the image in the preview window.



### Flattener Preview

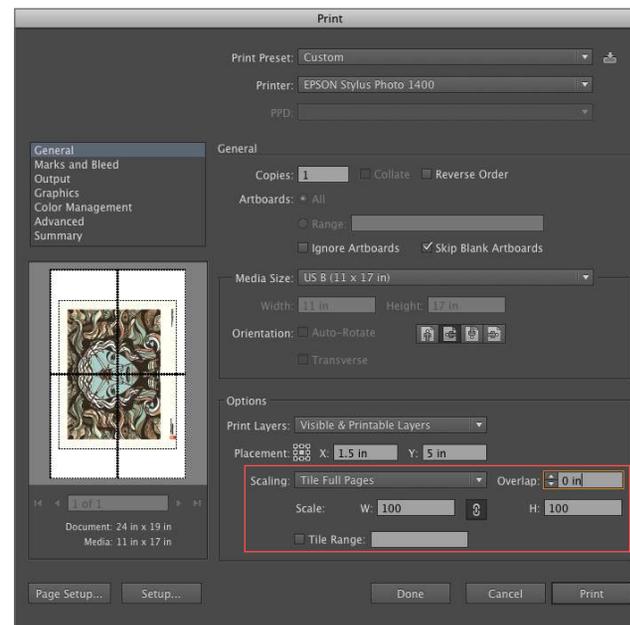
To see all the available controls in the Flattener Preview dialog box, choose Show Options from the panel menu. Choose an existing transparency flattener preset, or create a custom preset based on your choices in the Flattener Preview dialog box.

## PRINTING FROM ILLUSTRATOR

The Print dialog box contains controls for selecting a printer and PostScript Printer Description (PPD), as well as access to page setup, presets, and options. Certain controls are displayed regardless of the option chosen in the left column of the dialog box. The remainder of the dialog box changes according to the selected option.

## Tiling Artboards

To tile artboards, you must print them one at a time. Enter the number of the artboard in the Range field, and choose the Tile option. You can numerically specify position in the Placement X/Y fields, or drag the thumbnail in the preview window to position the artwork relative to tiles.



### Tiling an Artboard

To tile an artboard, select the artboard's number in the Range field, then set the Tile options. You can drag the thumbnail in the preview window to reposition the artwork in the tile indicators.

### Print Presets

You can create print presets to store specific settings for each printing device in your department, making it faster and easier to print to multiple devices without having to change settings each time you switch devices. Set all the options as you wish for a single device, then click the Save Preset button at the bottom of the Print dialog box to name and save it as a preset. The preset will then be available under the Print Preset pop-up menu any time you open the Print dialog box. You can also export and import saved print presets.

To export print presets:

1. Choose Edit > Print Presets.
2. Select one or more presets in the list and click Export. Shift-click to select a range of presets. Control-click (Windows) or Command-click (Mac OS) to select several individual presets.
3. Specify a name and location, and then click Save. If you have chosen multiple print presets, they are all stored in a single, saved Preset file. Saved Illustrator print presets do not have a file extension, so it is a good idea to give the saved presets a recognizable name.

To import print presets:

1. Choose Edit > Print Presets.
2. Click Import. Locate and select the file containing the presets you wish to import, and click OK.

## Print options

You can select from the following options:

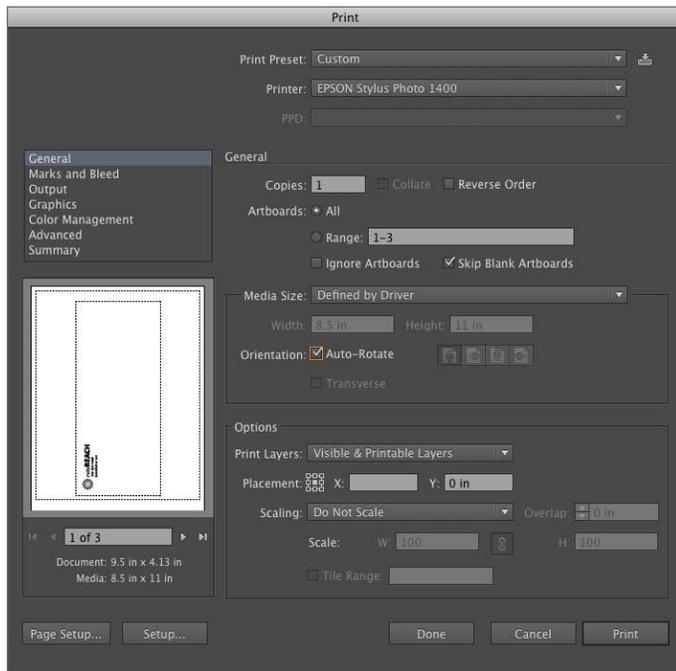
- **General:** This option lets you choose number of copies, page size and orientation, page range, scaling (including anamorphic factors that do not maintain the original proportions), tiling options, and which layers to print. You can choose to ignore artboards or skip blank artboards. You can now choose to auto-rotate artboards.
- **Marks and Bleed:** Select printer's marks, page information and color bars, as well as bleed. Since Illustrator supports a specified bleed "zone," you can check the Use Document Bleed Settings option if the document was set up with bleed, or you can manually specify bleed values. Bleed begins at the edge of an artboard. If you are printing multiple artboards, the same bleed value is applied to all of them.
- **Output:** Select composite or separated output; also choose in-RIP separations, and specify which colors are output when printing separations.

- **Graphics:** Set path flatness, font downloading, and PostScript level. If necessary, you can choose Compatible Gradient and Gradient Mesh Printing to convert meshes and gradients to JPEG in the print stream. Use this option only if you cannot get complicated meshes or gradients to print otherwise. The current Raster Effects Resolution is displayed, but you must exit the print dialog box to change the setting.
- **Color Management:** Choose whether to let Illustrator determine correct printing colors or allow the printer to do so. Select a color profile and rendering intent for printing.
- **Advanced:** Choose to preserve, discard, or simulate overprints. Choose from existing flattener presets, or create a custom preset for this document.
- **Summary:** View a list of chosen printing options, and see warnings about issues such as transparency flattening or out-of-gamut objects.

## Printing Multiple Artboards

There are several important controls for printing artboards under the General topic:

- **Ignore Artboards:** This option prints all the artwork on the entire Illustrator canvas and disregards the Artboard boundaries. The content is treated much like artwork in previous versions of Illustrator: the outside boundaries of all the artwork are regarded as a bounding box and the Artboard edges are ignored.
- **Skip Blank Artboards:** This option will prevent outputting blank plates for empty Artboards.
- **Auto-Rotate:** Artboards are automatically printed in the optimal orientation, based on media chosen.



## Printing Multiple Artboards

The *Print dialog* contains controls for selecting and previewing artboards before you print. Set up tiling options, and take advantage of the *Auto-Rotate* option for document with differing artboard sizes.

To select a discontinuous range of artboards, separate the artboard numbers with a comma (e.g., "1,3" to print the first and third artboard).

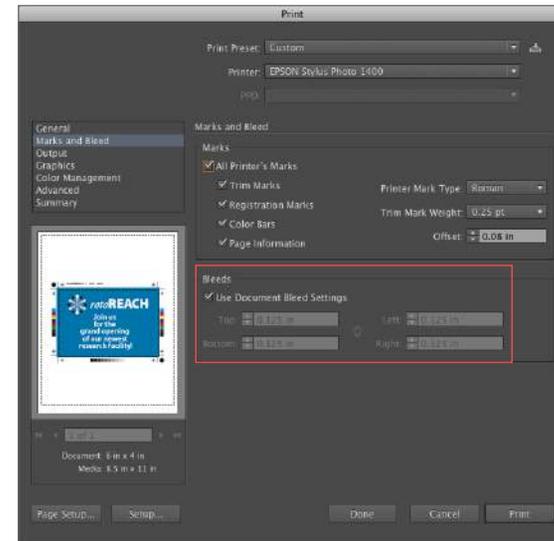
The navigational control beneath the preview thumbnail pane in the print dialog allows you scroll through the Artboards in the Illustrator file so you can confirm that selected Artboards will fit in the specified media.

## Printing Bleed

There are two methods for including bleed in print output: invoking an existing bleed setting, or manually entering bleed values. If a bleed value has been specified during document setup, or added by modifying the document setup at some point (File > Document Setup),

it can be invoked by just checking the *Use Document Bleed Settings* option in the *Print dialog*.

If bleed has not been established formally by specifying bleed settings in *Document Setup*, you can manually enter the appropriate values in the bleed fields in the *Print dialog*. Note that, by default, the four bleed fields are linked: change the value in one field, and they all change. You can, however, click the link icon to unlink the fields, and enter different values if necessary.



## Printing Bleed

If a bleed setting has been established for the file, just check the option to *Use Document Bleed Settings* to include artwork in the bleed in output. If no bleed setting has been established, you can also manually enter bleed values.

## CREATING PDF FILES

Illustrator CS6 can create Adobe PDF files directly, without the need to generate PostScript and process it through Distiller. To create a PDF from an Illustrator file, choose File > Save As and choose Adobe PDF for the format. The options you choose depend on the ultimate purpose of the PDF. For example, a PDF to be used for customer reviews can contain lower-resolution raster content than a PDF intended to be

submitted to a RIP. Illustrator ships with seven PDF presets, but you can create, save, import, and export your own custom PDF presets.

Note that, while Illustrator provides options to add security to a PDF as it is created, many workflow components such as RIPs and imposition software will reject a PDF with security. Password protection may be appropriate in PDFs containing sensitive content that you send to customers, but such security settings are usually problematic in a print workflow. For more information on PDF settings, see the “Common Resources” chapter earlier in this document, and the Acrobat X Pro chapter later in this document.

## Illustrator default preset

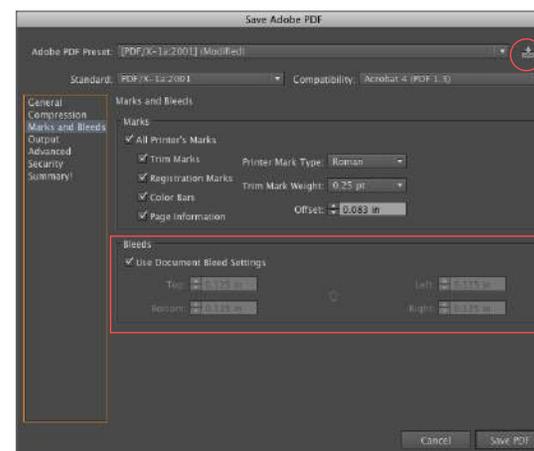
The default PDF preset creates a very flexible PDF. It can be opened by Acrobat and Reader version 6 and above and reopened in Illustrator if necessary. Its options include:

- **Compatible with Acrobat 6:** May not be appropriate for some older RIPs and workflows that do not accept later versions of PDF. Transparency is not flattened.
- **Preserve Illustrator Editing Capabilities:** Includes the complete Illustrator file within the PDF, which allows the file to be safely reopened in Illustrator for editing. This option can substantially increase file size, and should be checked only if you intend to allow round-tripping of the file back into Illustrator.
- **Embed Page Thumbnails:** Because Acrobat automatically creates thumbnails when opening a PDF, there is no advantage to enabling this option.
- **Create Acrobat Layers from Top-Level Layers:** Allows you to maintain layers in the PDF, if your workflow supports Acrobat 6-compatible files.
- **Compression:** Compresses image content using ZIP (lossless) compression but does not downsample the image.

## Other PDF creation presets

Illustrator CS6 includes presets shared with other Creative Suite 6 components, including High Quality Print, Press Quality, PDF/X1a, PDF/X-3, and PDF/X-4 options. For descriptions of these PDF presets, see the “Common Resources” chapter earlier in this document.

By default, bleed is not included when you choose the PDF/X-1a preset. Consider starting with the PDF/X-1a or PDF/X-4 preset (depending on your workflow requirements), then setting the bleed value under Marks and Bleeds, and save this custom preset for future use when you want to create a PDF/X-1a-compliant PDF including bleed.



### Including Bleed in PDFs

*Bleed is not included by default when saving an Illustrator file as a PDF. Be sure to check the correct options under Marks and Bleed. To save a custom preset, click the circled icon.*

## Creating multi-page PDFs from Multiple Artboards

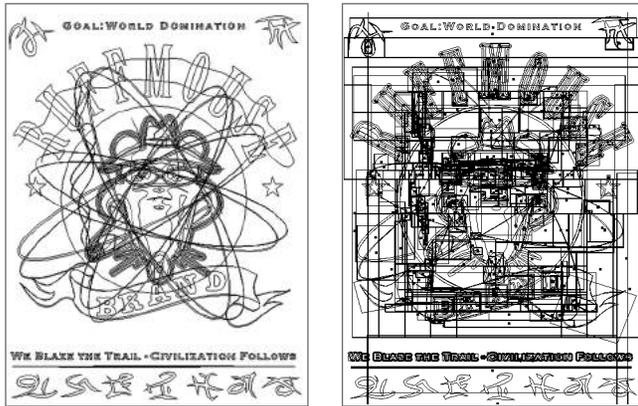
You have the option to save all Artboards in a multi-page PDF, or choose individual Artboards to include in the PDF. Illustrator assigns a number to each artboard; to view Artboard numbers, choose the Artboard tool and note the numbers that are displayed in the upper left-hand corners of all Artboards, or use the Artboards panel.

Illustrator files with multiple Artboards can be saved with any type of PDF preset, including PDF/X-1a. Each page in the resulting PDF will be the dimensions of the artboard.

## OPENING ILLUSTRATOR PDF FILES IN ILLUSTRATOR

Adobe PDF files created from Illustrator, and saved with the Preserve Illustrator Editing Capabilities option checked, can be safely opened in Illustrator because the Illustrator file itself is embedded in the PDF.

However, it is not recommended that you open other types of PDFs in Illustrator for editing. A very simple PDF, with no live text or transparency, may survive the trip. But with most files, you risk losing font embedding (if the necessary fonts are not active on your system), and you may inadvertently change objects, losing fidelity to the customer's intent.



### Opening a PDF in Illustrator

*An Illustrator PDF saved with Preserve Editing Capabilities retains fidelity to the original when reopened in Illustrator (left, in outline view). However, a PDF saved without this option loses fidelity to the original when reopened, and results in a file that is much more difficult to edit (right, in outline view).*

If it is necessary to perform edits to a customer PDF that go beyond the editing capabilities of Acrobat X Pro or a dedicated PDF editing application, it is best to ask your customer to make the edits and supply a corrected PDF.

For more information, see [http://www.adobe.com/go/ai\\_support](http://www.adobe.com/go/ai_support). To search, type appropriate terms in the Search For field, select other Search options, and then click the Search button.

# Chapter 5: Adobe Acrobat X Pro

**NOTE:** See *Addendum* for information on *Adobe Acrobat XI Pro*

There are many ways to create PDFs, aside from creating them from within Adobe Creative Suite 6 components, as described in the "Common Resources" chapter of this guide. For example, when Adobe Acrobat is installed on a Windows system, Microsoft Office applications such as Word and PowerPoint® gain the PDFMaker macro to generate PDFs. While these are fully compliant Adobe PDF files, they may not be print-ready. You may receive PDFs generated from non-Adobe programs that use Distiller as a PDF creator, and also from applications that use non-Adobe libraries or utilities to create PDFs.

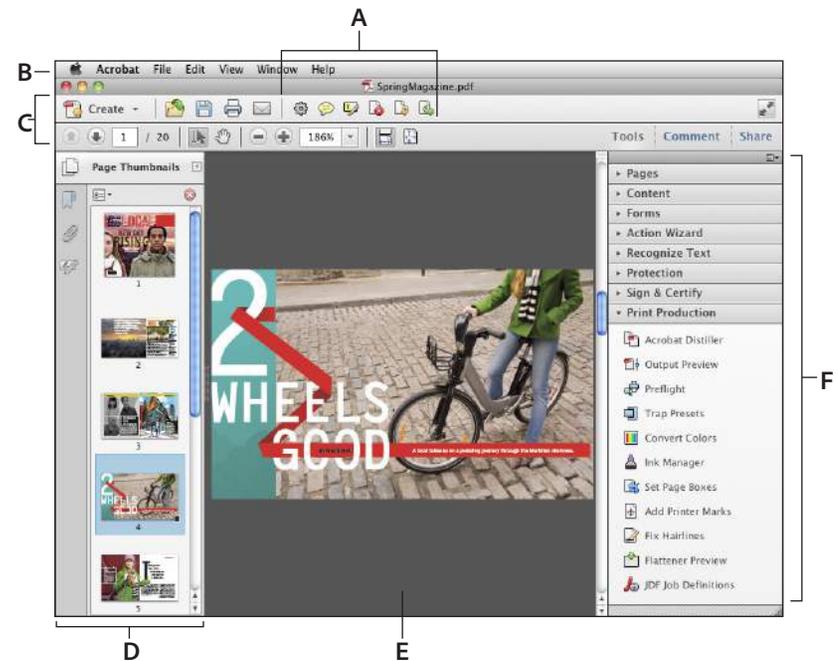
In an ideal world, your customers carefully follow your specifications for PDF creation, and provide a perfect PDF for print. However, this is frequently not the case, and you must troubleshoot—and repair—customer files to ensure successful imaging and printing.

The edits you can perform on a PDF are limited, but you may be surprised at what you can repair. The best solution is to fix the problem in the originating application and generate a new PDF; but you may not have that option. For example, an ad submitted by a customer may have been created by another designer, who inherited the file from another supplier, and so on. The combination of communication issues and looming deadlines means that you have to perform the repair in Acrobat, with no access to the original files. Thus, it's important to know what you can—and cannot—fix, and to be aware of the repercussions of some edits.

## CHANGES IN ADOBE ACROBAT X PRO

The Acrobat interface has been substantially revamped in Acrobat X Pro. While you may experience a period of adjustment as you get familiar with the new interface, you'll find that controls are more

logically organized by task. For example, Preflight is now accessed via the Print Production options in the Tools panel, as well as the Edit menu. You can click **Tools**, **Comment**, or **Share** to display the appropriate task panels.



- A. Quick Tools
- B. Menu bar
- C. Toolbars
- D. Navigation pane (Page Thumbnails displayed)
- E. Document pane
- F. Tools pane

## NEW AND IMPROVED FEATURES

- **Customizable Quick Tools Toolbar:** Initially, only the most commonly-used tools appear in the Quick Tools toolbar. However, you can completely customize the toolbar: Just click the gear icon (⚙) to display the customize dialog (or right-click the toolbar and choose Quick Tools). Choose additional tools from the left side of the dialog

box and click the Add arrow (➤). To add a separator bar, click the Add Separator button (⌘). To move tools up and down in the arrangement, use the Up/Down arrows (⬆️/⬇️) on the right side of the dialog. To remove a tool from the Quick Tools toolbar, click the Remove arrow (⬅️). Click OK when you're finished. To reset, right-click in the toolbar and choose Reset Toolbars.



### Customizing the Quick Tools Toolbar

To add a tool to the QuickTools Toolbar, select the tool in the left pane, then click the Add arrow (➤). You can also add vertical separator bars and modify the order of tools.

- **Task Panes:** Rather than appearing under menus, controls for common operations are now stored in Task Panes. Click **Tools**, **Comment**, or **Share** to display sets of task panes. By default, only the most commonly-used task panes (Pages, Content, Forms, Action Wizard, Recognize Text, Protection, Sign & Certify, and Document Processing) are displayed when you click Tools. To display additional panes, such as the Print Production tools, click the Show/Hide Panels icon (⌘) and select the name of a task pane. You can also select the name of a panel from View > Tools Click a task pane name to display its options. By default, an open pane is closed when you select another pane. If you want to see the contents of multiple task panes simultaneously,

click the Show/Hide Panels icon and choose the Allow Multiple Panels Open option.

- **Streamlined Commenting Controls:** Mark-up tools and review options such as Send for Shared Review and Track Reviews are now available through the Comment task pane. Click Comment in the toolbar to display the Comment task pane.
- **Action Wizard:** Combine multiple operations into a batch operation that can be applied with a single click. The Actions approach replaces the batch processing feature in previous versions of Acrobat. If you rely on batch sequences that you've created in Acrobat 9, you should be able to import those sequences as Actions (although some may have to be modified slightly to run correctly). Actions are created by combining available operations; there is no "recording" of actions as there is in Photoshop. Acrobat X Pro includes some predefined actions, but you can create your own custom actions and export them for other users.
- **Read Mode:** To view a PDF in a simplified interface without toolbars or task panes, click the Read Mode icon (⌘). Use the controls in the floating toolbar near the bottom of the display to zoom, print, and navigate. Click the close button in the floating toolbar to exit Read Mode, or choose View > Read Mode to toggle it off.



### Read Mode Toolbar

Use the controls to save, zoom, print, and navigate in a PDF when it is displayed in Read Mode. Click the "X" to exit Read Mode.

Note that Adobe® Acrobat® X Pro opens either as a stand-alone application, or inside a web browser. When a PDF is opened within a web browser, the toolbars, task panes, and navigation pane contents are not available; the PDF opens in Read mode. However, you can

display the hidden controls by clicking the floating toolbar near the bottom of the browser window. PDF Portfolios open with a special portfolio work area.

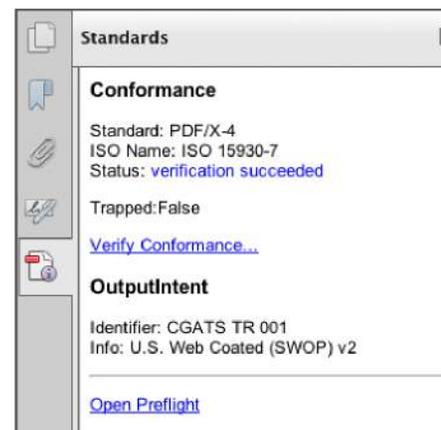
- **Scanning Enhancements:** Recognize text in scanned files with improved optical character recognition (OCR). Reduce file size (by up to 50%), scan color or black-and-white originals, and copy or export text for reuse in Word, Excel, or InDesign.
- **Save as Other Formats:** Reduce PDF file size, extend features for Reader users, save as Microsoft Word or spreadsheet files. The conversion to Word formats is greatly improved over previous versions.

## EXAMINING PDFs

Acrobat X Pro includes extensive forensic tools for finding potential problems in PDF files as well as enhanced tools for fixing common problems.

### Standards Compliance

If you open a PDF/X file (or a PDF in compliance with any of the standards, such as PDF/A or PDF/E), a new option automatically appears in the Navigation pane. Click the standards icon (📄) in the Navigation pane to display the specifics of the file's compliance. Click **Verify Conformance** to confirm complete compliance with the standard. If you need to convert the PDF to compliance with another standard, click **Open Preflight** to launch Preflight and select the appropriate FixUp.

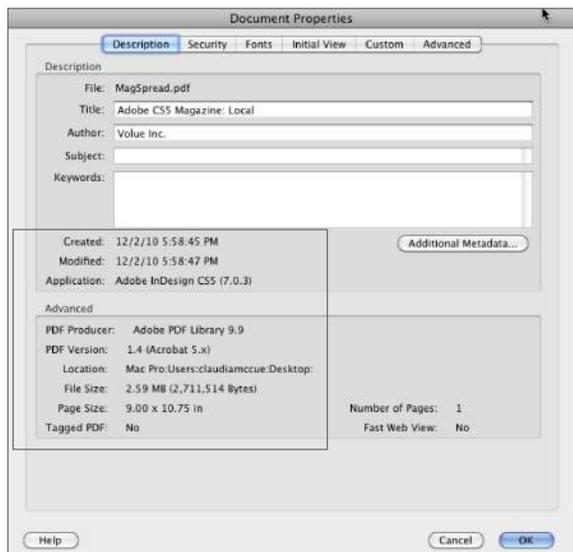


### Standards Navigation Pane

*When you open a PDF that complies with a standard, the Standards category becomes available in the Navigation pane. Click the icon to view information about the PDF's standards compliance.*

### Determining a File's Origin: Viewing PDF Document Properties

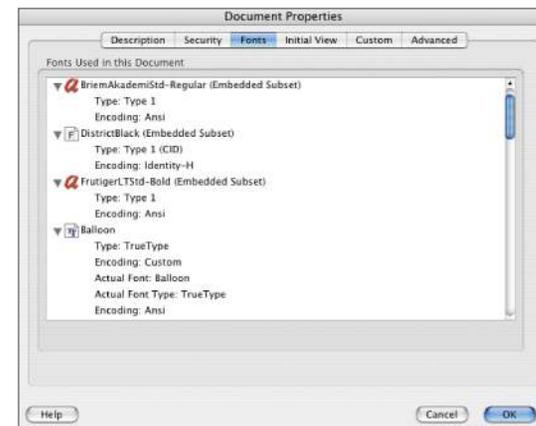
To view helpful information about a document, such as the source file's original application and fonts used in the document, choose File > Properties. Click the Description tab at the top of the dialog box to view the source of the PDF as well as its version. Not all methods of PDF creation leave information in the PDF about its origin, but you should be able to identify the origin of PDFs created by Adobe applications, Acrobat Distiller, QuarkXPress®, or the PDFMaker in Microsoft Office applications. The most important piece of information on this pane may be PDF Version, considering that some older workflows and devices do not support more recent versions of PDF. Check to make sure that the PDF is supported by your RIP, as well as any other process that will handle the file (such as imposition software). Remember that you can use the PDF Optimizer feature in Acrobat to save the file to a lower version, if necessary, without impairing font embedding. When using PDF Optimizer, it is recommended that you adhere to a standard such as PDF/X.



## Document Properties

You can quickly determine the origin of a PDF, as well as security settings and font embedding characteristics in the Document Properties dialog box, by choosing the Description option. This PDF was exported from InDesign CS4 (v. 5.0.1). It uses PDF version 1.4, which means it is compatible with Acrobat 5.0 and above. Thus, it may contain live transparency.

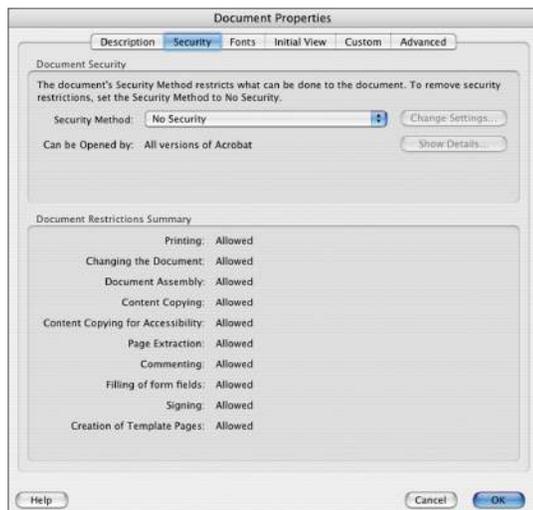
Click the Fonts tab at the top of the Document Properties dialog box to view information about font embedding in the PDF. Check to make sure that all fonts are fully embedded or subset; this information is available in parentheses after the font name. If embedding has no entry, the font is not embedded, which may lead to problems at output time. If you don't own the necessary font, contact the customer and request that they recreate the PDF with the font properly embedded. If the font forbids embedding, ask that the customer consult the end-user licensing agreement (EULA) for the font to determine if they can legally supply the font separately for you to download to the RIP for correct imaging.



## Document Properties/Fonts

All fonts embedded in the PDF are listed, along with their embedding status. Here, the font Balloon is not embedded. Unless you have access to Balloon, font substitution will occur at print time, and thus output won't be faithful to the original file.

To view information about the security settings in the PDF, click the Security tab at the top of the Document Properties dialog box. If the PDF has any restrictions—even if they don't include restrictions to printing—to avoid problems, get a new PDF without any security restrictions whatsoever from the customer. This is necessary even if no password is required to open the document and the document has no restrictions. If a Permissions password has been applied, your imposition software may reject the file, and your RIP may be unable to process it. PDFs for print should be completely free of any security settings.

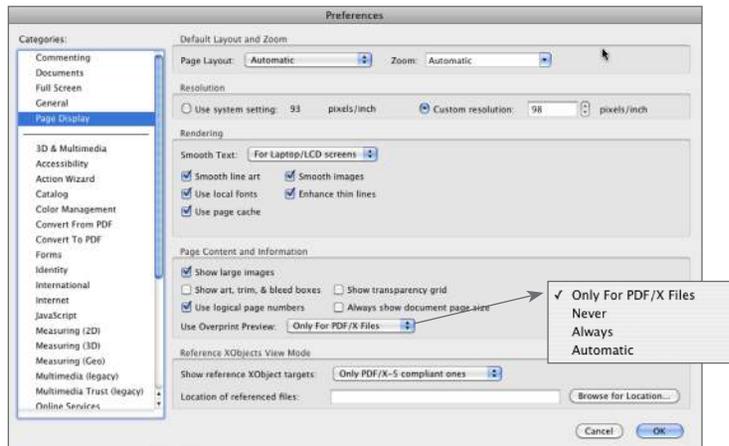


### Document Properties/Security

Any security limitations appear in the Security pane. Even if the security setting allows printing, some processes (such as imposition software) will reject the file unless it is free of all security restrictions (including permission passwords).

## OVERPRINT PREVIEW IN ADOBE X PRO

Overprint Preview mode displays overprinted objects on screen as they would appear in print, not as an opaque stack of graphics. It also provides a more accurate preview of how spot colors will look.



### Controlling Overprint Preview

Under Page Display, choose from Never, Always, Automatic, or Only for PDF/X Files.

In Preferences (PC: Edit > Preferences; Mac: Acrobat > Preferences), choose the Page Display topic. Under Page Content and Information, you are given four choices for Overprint Preview:

- Only For PDF/X Files: Overprint Preview is automatically activated when you open a PDF/X-compliant file.
- Never: Overprint Preview is not activated when you open a file, even if it contains overprinting elements. However, Overprint Preview is automatically activated when you open the Output Preview panel. This is the default setting in both Acrobat X Pro and Adobe Reader 9.
- Always: Overprint Preview is active at all times.
- Automatic: Overprint Preview is activated when you open any PDF containing overprinting elements, and is triggered on a page-by-page basis.

Even if you have set the Overprint Preview preference to “Never,” Simulate Overprinting is automatically chosen any time you choose Output Preview in the Print Production task pane. Note that Adobe Reader X offers the same choices in Preferences; advise your customers to download the current version of the free Reader so they can view Overprint in their own PDFs to check for problems before they submit a file for printing.

## COMPARING DOCUMENTS

The Compare Documents feature allows you to compare two PDFs and generate a report highlighting the differences. To launch the feature, choose View > Compare Documents (in Acrobat 9 Pro, this feature was under the Document menu). You can choose from any two currently open files, or browse for two PDFs to compare. Designate the older and newer file, specify the type of documents you are comparing, and Acrobat generates a PDF with the results of the comparison. Acrobat X builds a very detailed report, highlighting every area that differs between the older and newer file.



## Compare Documents

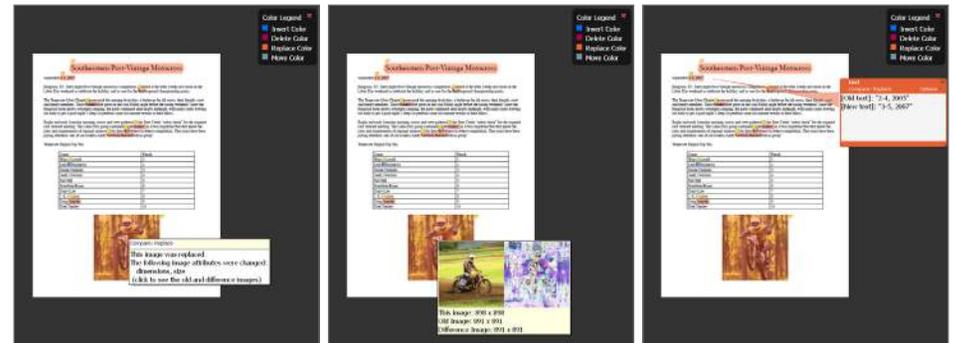
Choose two PDFs for comparison, specify a page range for each, and choose a document description — reports, presentations, or scanned documents — and click OK.

It's important to choose the correct document description for optimum results:

- **Reports, presentations and magazine layouts:** Multiple page documents, with text flow from page to page, and objects crossing the gutter on facing-page spreads.
- **Presentation decks, drawings, or illustrations:** Page-independent files; there is no connection between pages other than page order. No text or graphics spanning connecting pages. Identifies content differences, as well as changes in page order.
- **Scanned Documents:** This option is a bitmap-only comparison. Useful for comparing two images when one has been touched up, or comparing architectural drawings. Also useful for comparing to files that have gone through different conversions or changes, such as transparency flattening, where only a bitmap compare will work since compare on a flattened PDF will highlight all the atomic regions.

- **Compare Text Only:** Can be used with any document type. Designed for comparing text in long documents (can result in long processing times). With Reports or Presentation options, indicates text differences while ignoring other changes (such as altered images).

Hover over a highlighted area in the resulting report PDF to see a description of the differences. Click on highlighted areas to see before-and-after comparisons of images. If the new image is a corrected version of the older image (rather than a completely different image), changed areas of the image are highlighted. Click on a highlighted area, and Acrobat displays a "difference" image that may make it easier to pinpoint the changes. The Compare Documents result is a PDF, and can be saved and reviewed with the job at any time.

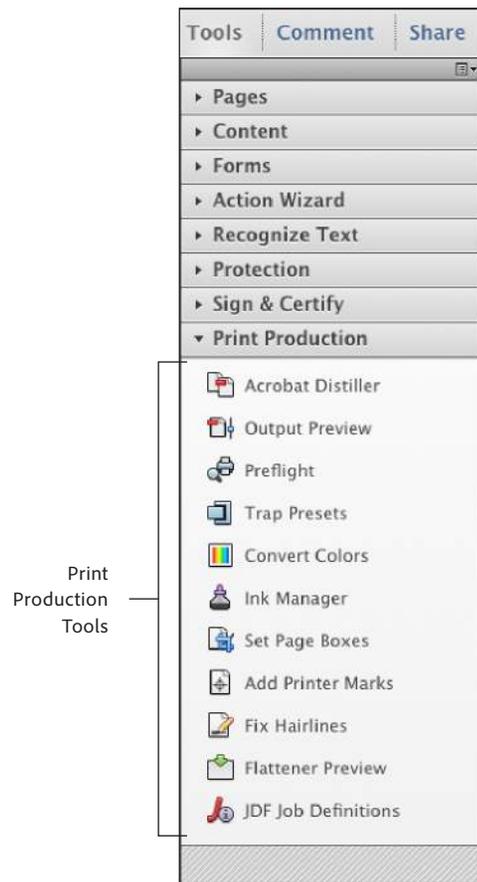


## Compare Documents: Results

The improved Compare Documents feature creates a PDF with detailed indications of the differences between two PDFs. Hover over a highlighted element to see a comment describing the difference, or click on the element to see a before-and-after comparison.

## ACROBAT X PRO PRINT PRODUCTION TOOLS

The Print Production tools are available by clicking **Tools** to open the Tasks pane, then clicking the Show/Hide Panels icon (☰) and toggling **Print Production** on. You can also choose **View > Tools > Print Production** to display the Print Production task pane. Note that, on the Macintosh, you cannot access any tools (except Preflight, available in the Edit menu) unless you have a document open.



### Print Production Tools

Notice that *Crop Pages* has been replaced with *Set Page Boxes*.

## ACROBAT DISTILLER

In modern workflows, it should be unnecessary to generate PostScript for conversion to PDF using Acrobat Distiller. However, Distiller is included to facilitate PDF creation from applications that do not export directly to PDF, or to take advantage of special operators via PDFMark. Most PDF settings created in Photoshop, Illustrator, or InDesign are also available in Distiller, because joboptions are stored by default in a common repository available to Distiller and Creative Suite applications. (Some settings, such as PDF/X-4, are not available in Distiller.)

## OUTPUT PREVIEW

Output Preview in Acrobat selectively shows, hides, and highlights objects on screen according to choices made in the Output Preview dialog box. Use Output Preview to visually check for extraneous inks, areas in excess of a total allowable area ink coverage value, RGB content, overprinting objects, rich black areas, and more. Because the feature does not generate a report, you must examine each page individually, and you might overlook very small details in a complex page. (For a rules-based check of the document that generates a report on all pages, see “Preflight,” later in this chapter.)



### Subtle Problems

None of these problems are apparent in the initial view of the PDF: extraneous spot colors, RGB image content, and overprinting white artwork. All may cause incorrect output if not fixed. Use the forensic tools in Acrobat X Pro to highlight such potential problems.

### Soft-Proofing Colors

In a color-managed workflow, you can soft-proof your document directly on the monitor to see how the document’s colors will look based on a specific output profile. The reliability of the soft proof depends on the quality of your monitor, your monitor profile, the accuracy of your device output profile, and the ambient lighting conditions of your work environment.

To display a soft proof:

1. In the Output Preview dialog box, choose a profile from the Simulation Profile pop-up menu. In a PDF/X file, the simulation profile will be dictated by the output profile chosen when the PDF was created.
2. Select the Simulate Ink Black option to preview in the monitor space the actual dynamic range defined by the proof profile. (This option is not available for all profiles.)
3. Select the Simulate Paper Color option to preview the specific shade of white for the print medium described by the proof profile. Simulate Ink Black is automatically selected. (This option is not available for all profiles.)

## Previewing Separations

You can choose to view a single separation or multiple separations in any combination, much like progressive proofs. To preview color separations:

1. Display the page you want to preview.
2. Click Tools to display the Task pane, click the Show/Hide Panels icon (☰) and display the Print Production tools. Click Output Preview to display the Output Preview controls. When you choose Output Preview, Acrobat automatically activates Overprint Preview if your preferences are not set to automatically activate it. The appearance of any overprinting objects changes, but such changes may be hard to see in very small objects. (You can check for overprinting objects more precisely later by using the Color Warnings feature in Output Preview.)
3. In the Output Preview dialog box, choose Separations from the Preview menu.

4. Use the check boxes to the left of the ink list to select the color separations you want to view or hide. When you deselect the box next to an ink, any content using that ink disappears in the document window. This makes it easy to pinpoint areas that are using the wrong spot color ink.
5. Set the Sample Size to Point Sample, 3 by 3 Average, or 5 by 5 Average.

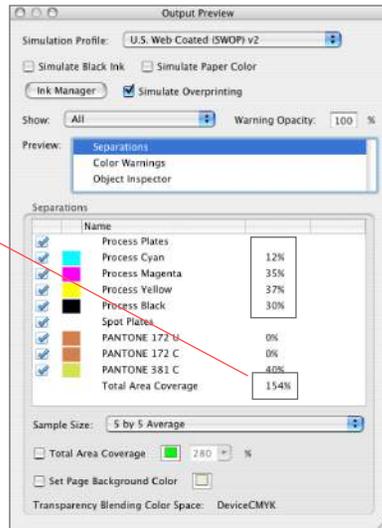
**Note:** At this point, if you discover any extraneous spot colors or find spot color content that should print as four-color process, use the Ink Manager function (see “Using the Ink Manager” later in this chapter) to fix the problem without having to return to the originating application.



## Viewing Separations

Use the check boxes to the left of ink names to selectively view separations. This can help you quickly determine if there are extraneous inks, or if objects may print in the wrong color.

6. Check ink percentage values by hovering the mouse pointer over an area in the document window. The ink percentages appear next to each ink, and your pointer acts as a rolling densitometer. Acrobat X now also displays a Total Area Coverage amount at the bottom of the list; this is especially helpful when spot and process colors are combined.



## Separations

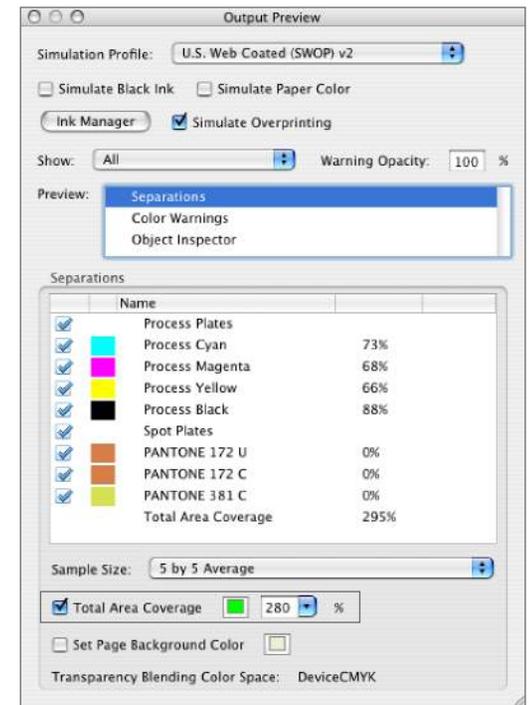
See all inks used in the file at a glance. View color values with a “rolling densitometer” as you move the pointer on screen. Note the new Total Area Coverage value displayed.

## Show Options

To highlight potential problem areas, choose a type of content from the Show menu. This feature isolates the chosen content on screen and temporarily hides all other content. This makes it easy to catch RGB content or to isolate CMYK content from spot content. RGB content is not a problem in a color-managed workflow, but it can be an issue in an all-CMYK workflow if the RIP does not perform satisfactory in-RIP color conversion. Fortunately, this problem can be fixed easily with another Print Production tool, the Convert Colors function.

Select the Total Area Coverage option to highlight any areas that exceed a total ink limit that you specify. The pop-up menu has predefined entries ranging from 180% to 400% in 20% increments; you can also manually enter any value between 1% and 1000%. You can change the highlight color by clicking the color block to the left of the percentage field and choosing a new color from the swatch menu. If one of the predefined swatches isn’t satisfactory, click the Other Color option at the bottom of the swatches matrix and create a new custom highlight

color. If only very small areas are highlighted, you shouldn’t have any problem printing the job. But the larger the areas that exceed the limit, the more likelihood that you’ll experience problems on press from heavy coverage. If you cannot correct this issue with the Convert Colors feature, you may have to edit problem content in the originating applications, and then regenerate the PDF.



## Total Area Coverage

Highlight areas that exceed the total ink limit. As with other warnings, you can change the highlight color by clicking the color block.

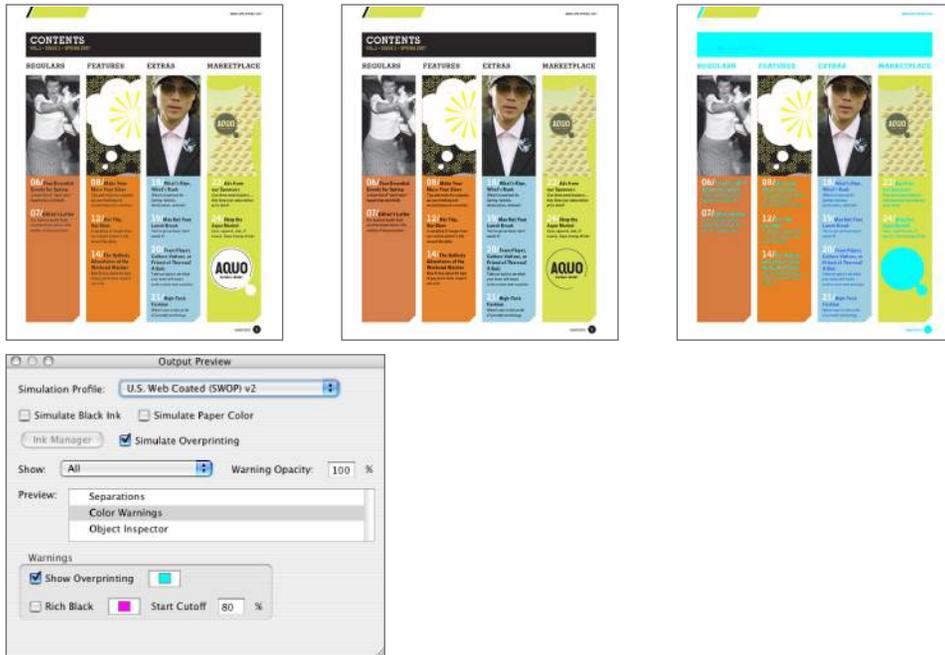
## Viewing Color Warnings

The Output Preview dialog box also includes color warnings that show where rich black inks and overprinting effects appear in the document. Such attributes don’t always indicate a problem, but highlighting them can help you determine whether they will cause any issues on output.

To view color warnings, choose Color Warnings from the Preview list, and select the warnings you want to activate. Select Show Overprinting,

Rich Black, or both. To change the highlight color for the warnings, click the swatch next to the warning, and select a new color from the swatch menu that appears.

The Overprinting warning highlights areas affected by some blending modes, and areas that have been set to overprint. Overprinting, such as black text overprinting a color area, is not necessarily a problem. But in the example document, the white logo at the lower right will disappear during imaging because it is set to overprint. This will have to be fixed before output.



## Color Warnings/Overprinting

Unintended overprint attributes can produce unwanted color combinations or cause objects to disappear when output. In this example, the white Aquo logo appears correct in normal view (top, left), but disappears when Simulate Overprinting is turned on in the Output Preview panel (top, center). This represents how the logo will actually output. To find other overprinting elements, select the Color Warnings option (left), and click the color block to choose a highlight color. Overprinting isn't always a problem, such as black overprinting text and the black rectangle (top, right). But this is a warning that the white Aquo logo will not print correctly; the white areas of the logo will disappear when the file is printed.

The Rich Black warning highlights areas that will print as rich black; that is, solid process black mixed with any underlying color inks for increased opacity and richer color. While this doesn't always indicate a problem (in fact, it's desirable to use a rich black build in large areas), it's helpful to identify rich black areas in case you need to modify your trap settings—for example, to perform pullbacks or keepaways (choking back on the cyan, magenta, and yellow to avoid registration problems) on reverse type within the rich black areas. New in Acrobat X Pro is the Start Cutoff value, which allows you to set a threshold value of black to be used in determining if an area is defined as Rich Black. Areas containing the threshold percentage of black plus any non-zero value for cyan, magenta or yellow will trigger the Rich Black warning.



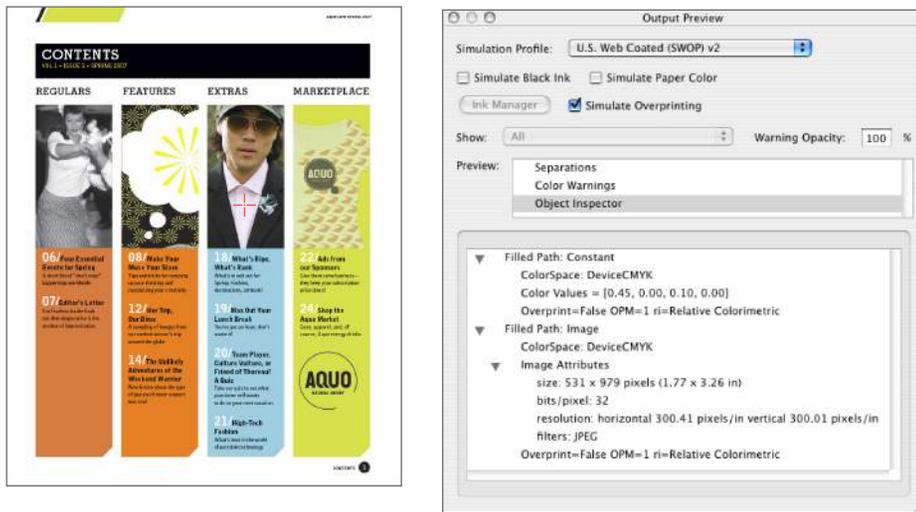
## Warnings—Rich Black

To view black areas that also include other colors, select the Rich Black option. Click the small color block to change the highlight color used by Acrobat to indicate rich black areas. Rich blacks aren't necessarily a problem, but it's helpful to highlight such areas in case trapping will require special handling, such as creating pullbacks in areas of reverse type or other art. Here, magenta highlights rich black areas.

## Object Inspector

The Object Inspector displays extensive information about the area directly underneath where the user has clicked. Choose the Object Inspector option under Preview in the Output Preview panel, and click anywhere in the displayed PDF. The Object Inspector window displays available information for the cursor position. If you click on an image,

resolution, color space, dimensions, and rendering intent are listed. If you click on a filled object, the color and overprint status are displayed. Click on text, and the font name, font type (for example, OpenType), size, color, and overprint status are displayed. Everything under the cursor click is described: click on black text that is overprinting a PMS 183 shape, and you'll see information about the black text as well as the PMS 183 shape underneath. The Object Inspector also displays information about transparency attributes, such as opacity settings and blending mode.



## Object Inspector

Click with the crosshair cursor to view information about the selected element. The Object Inspector window displays information about everything directly under the cursor, in stacking order. Here, the black crosshair over the man's shirt indicates where the user has clicked. If you click in an empty area, the Object Inspector window will be empty.

## PREFLIGHT

Since Output Preview requires you to visually determine problems, depending on what's being shown, hidden, or highlighted, many problems are more easily found using the Acrobat Preflight function.

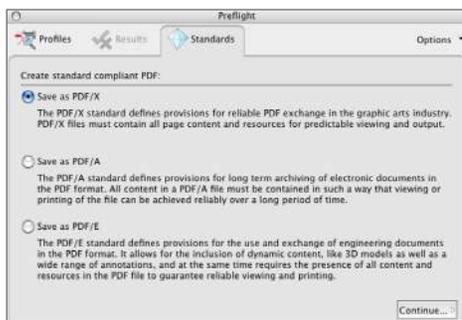
Preflight tests a PDF against specified rules, and provides pass-or-fail reports that highlight any problems found. An extensive selection of preflight profiles ship with Acrobat X Pro, and you can use any of the supplied profiles as a starting point to create your own custom profile. But it's important to note that some profiles may regard some conditions in a PDF as warranting only a warning or informational notes, even though those conditions are inappropriate for correct output in your workflow. For this reason, it is often necessary for you to create your own custom preflight profiles to ensure that you uncover pertinent issues in PDF files.

Preflighting a PDF file is critical to ensure that it meets the requirements of your print output workflow. Preflight tools can save you time and trouble by applying consistent and customized tests to your files, alerting you to make corrections before creating output.

The Preflight interface has been streamlined in Acrobat X Pro, making it easier to find controls. Preflight profiles give you a head start finding and fixing many common print production problems. And the Standards pane makes it easy to create standards-compliant PDFs from existing PDF files.

## Standards

Open Preflight by clicking its entry in the Print Production task list, and click on the Standards button at the top of the Preflight panel. To convert the current file to a standard, choose radio button for the appropriate standard (PDF/X, PDF/A, or PDF/E) then click Continue. Select the specific settings for the conversion, and click Continue to finish the conversion. For example, if you select PDF/X, you are then presented with the choice of PDF/X-1a, PDF/X-3, PDF/X-4, or PDF/X-4-p (which references a destination profile which is not embedded, but rather is referenced by a unique ID).



## Standards Options in Preflight

You can now choose to convert an existing PDF to a standards-compliant file. Choose from PDF/X, PDF/A, or PDF/E. Once you've selected the standard, you can choose the particular specification you want.

## Default Preflight Profiles

Acrobat X Pro includes more than 50 prebuilt preflight profiles, which are designed to identify potential problems in specific workflows and, in some cases, fix problems. Included are profiles that check for font embedding, text using rich black, violations of total area coverage limits, and more. Preflight Fixups give you the ability to merge spot colors with different names, assign objects to layers, embed fonts, and much more. You can also customize a preflight profile to match your specific needs (see "Customizing a Preflight Profile" later in this chapter). Profiles are listed under categories:

- Acrobat/PDF version compatibility: Checks for the version of Acrobat required to open the file.
- Create PDF layers: Options include creating separate layers for vector, text, and image content, or placing objects on layers based on their transparency or overprint settings.
- Custom profiles: You will only have this category if you have created custom profiles.

- Imported profiles: You will have this category only if you have imported profiles.
- Digital printing and online publishing: Checks to see that a PDF file meets the requirements for common black-and-white or color digital printing conditions, or examines and optimizes a file for online use.
- PDF analysis: Includes multiple profiles to check for common issues, such as fonts that are not embedded, white objects set to overprint, and low-resolution images, and more.
- PDF fixups: Repairs common problems. Fixups can be used separately, or attached to a preflight profile, enabling you to automate some common edits, such as converting RGB content to CMYK.
- PDF/A compliance: Checks for compliance with PDF/A-1a or PDF/A-1b specifications. Fixups to convert files to compliant files (when possible) are also listed in this category. (The PDF/A specifications are for archival storage of PDF files.)
- PDF/E compliance: Includes checks for compliance with the Engineering standard, plus fixups to convert a file to PDF/E if possible, or remove PDF/E information if necessary.
- PDF/X compliance: Checks for compliance with PDF/X-1a, PDF/X-3, PDF/X-4, PDF/X-4p, PDF/X-5g, or PDF/X-5pg specifications. Fixups to convert files (when possible) to compliant files are also available in this category.
- Prepress: Includes profiles geared toward magazine ads, sheetfed offset, web offset, and newspaper conditions.

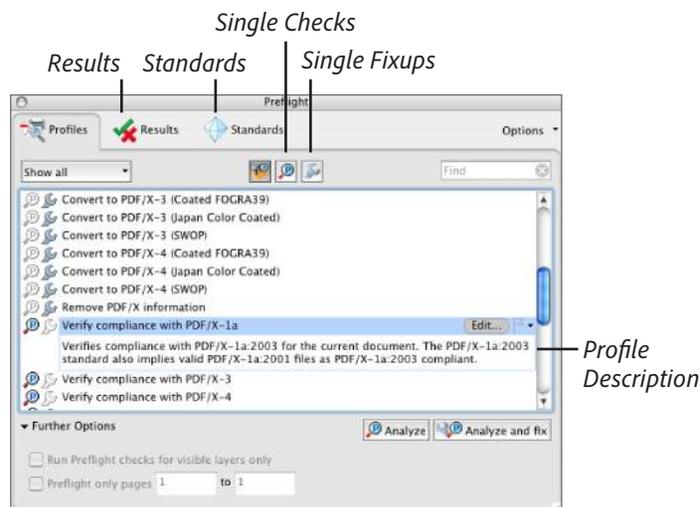
## Using Preflight Profiles

To preflight an open PDF document with an existing profile:

1. Click Preflight in the Print Production task list.
2. Choose the category that most matches your needs, and click the triangle to the left of the category to reveal the profiles within the category. If you have imported profiles, you will have an Imported

profiles category as well. And if you have created custom profiles, you will also have a Custom profiles category.

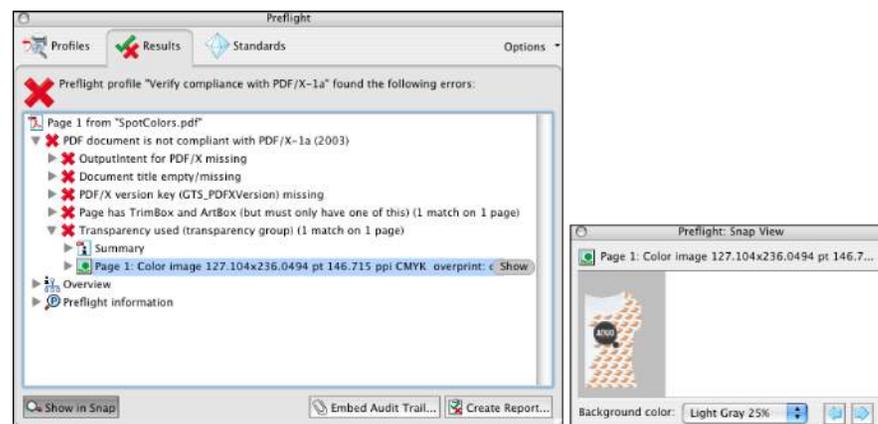
3. Select a preflight profile that matches your output criteria. The profile description appears under the profile name. You can also click the Further Options triangle at the bottom of the panel, to specify whether to run the preflight check just for visible layers, or to limit the preflight to just a range of pages.
4. Click Analyze or Analyze and Fix.



### Preflight Profiles

To use an existing profile, select it from the list of profiles, and choose Analyze (or, if the profile includes a Fixup, choose Analyze and fix). Note the new options for Standards, Single Checks, and Single Fixups.

5. Review the results. To view a problem element, you can use the Show in Snap option, or you can double-click the entry in the results (or click the Show button) and Acrobat displays a colored rectangle around the element in the page.



### Viewing Preflight Results

A red "X" indicates an aspect of the PDF that did not pass the preflight check. To highlight the offending element, select the item in the Results list and click the Show in Snap button. The element is displayed in the Snap View window.

You can modify the appearance of the highlight display through the Preferences options available in the Preflight panel menu.

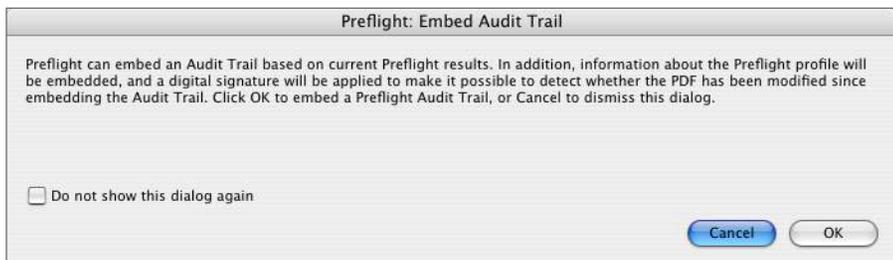
The Snap View function displays a separate window showing the object itself. You can change the background color used in the Snap View using the Background Color menu at the bottom of the window. You can navigate problem content by clicking the forward arrow at the bottom of the Snap View window. Keep clicking the forward or back navigation arrows in the Snap window to go to all of the PDF's problem objects listed in the Preflight results.

### Saving Preflight Results

To save the results of the preflight as a report, click the Create Report button at the bottom of the Preflight dialog box. Provide a name and location for the report. A report PDF lists the problems found, as well as highlighting the problems on a thumbnail of the document. You can easily view the highlighted areas in Acrobat by opening the Layers panel (View > Show/Hide > Navigation Panes > Layers) and selecting the layers you'd like to display. If you prefer, Acrobat can generate an XML- or text-based report rather than a PDF.

## Embedding an Audit Trail

The ability to embed an audit trail in a PDF is based on the Ghent Working Group Standard for preflight tracking. You must run a full preflight profile (not a single check or fixup) in order to embed an audit trail. To embed a description of the preflight profile used, as well as a digital signature, choose Embed Audit Trail from the Preflight panel. This provides a method for checking the document at later stages of the workflow, to ensure that nothing has been altered after the preflight.



### Preflight Audit Trail

*Embed an Audit Trail in a preflighted PDF to help keep track of the preflight results and the profile used. The Audit Trail feature will also reflect whether the PDF has been altered since the audit trail was embedded.*

## PDF Fixups

When Fixups are included in a Preflight profile, Acrobat will automatically repair specified problems that the preflight process finds. Keep in mind that not all problems can be fixed in Acrobat. For example, image content of insufficient resolution can be pinpointed with Preflight, but there's no way to rectify such an issue within Acrobat. As with many problems in a PDF file, the origin of the issue lies much further upstream in the lifecycle of the job. Obviously, it would be necessary to locate a high-resolution image, replace the low-resolution content in the original application, and generate a new PDF.

A profile may contain a preflight check, a fixup, or both. To identify what components a profile contains, examine the icons to the left of the entry in the Preflight profile dialog box:

- Preflight profiles which contain only checks will display a highlighted magnifying glass () to the left of the name.
- Fixups display a highlighted wrench () to the left of the name.
- Profiles that combine checks along with fixups will show both the magnifying glass and wrench highlighted ()

## Single Checks and Fixups

Acrobat X Pro includes Single Checks and Single Fixups to streamline the finding and fixing of common problems, such as image resolution. Single Checks and Single Fixups can be run independently without needing to be incorporated into a Profile. Acrobat X Pro includes an extensive list of Single Checks, including checks for ink coverage, transparency, font embedding, text using rich black, black objects set to knock out, objects using Registration color, images below a threshold resolution, and many more. Single Fixups include convert Registration color to black, merge spot colors with different names, embed fonts, assign object types to layers for troubleshooting, and much more. You can also create your own Single Checks and Single Fixups.

To create a single check:

1. In the Profiles panel of the Preflight dialog box, click the Select Single Checks button.
2. Choose Options > Create New Preflight Check.
3. On the right side of the dialog box, select a group, select a property for the group, and then click Add. The new single check appears in the group appropriate to its group and property.

To create a single fixup:

1. In the Profiles panel of the Preflight dialog box, click the Select Single Fixups button.
2. Choose Options > Create New Preflight Fixup.
3. Name the fixup and specify the criteria. The new fixup appears in the group appropriate to its category and type.

## Layer Fixups

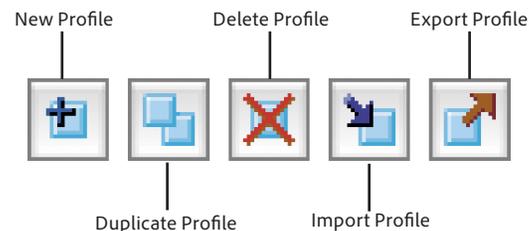
Acrobat X Pro includes a group of Fixups devoted to creating and manipulating Layers. Select the Single Fixup button for Fixups that create different layers for text, graphics, and images; create layer names for unnamed layers; put overprinting objects on a single layer, or put transparent object on a single layer. Think of these layers as “view groups” rather than layers as they exist in an Illustrator or Photoshop file: they enable you to selectively view components of a PDF, regardless of actually visual stacking order. For more information on creating, viewing, and printing PDF layers, see Acrobat X Pro Help, available under the Help menu.

## Customizing a Preflight Profile

Acrobat X Pro ships with an extensive selection of preflight profiles, but you will probably want to create some custom profiles tailored to your needs. You can combine multiple checks within one profile; you’re not limited to checking for just one potential issue. You can create, edit, and delete custom profiles. You can also export profiles to share with your workgroup or send to customers, and import profiles to add to your preflight list by using the buttons at the bottom of the Edit Profile dialog box.

To edit a preflight profile and save it as a custom profile for future use:

1. Choose Create New Preflight Profile from the Preflight panel menu. A list of profiles appears in the lefthand pane, with a row of edit buttons below the list. If this is the first new custom profile you have created, the Custom profiles category is created, and your new profile is listed in the category as New Profile 1. You may find it easier to select an existing profile and click the Duplicate Profile button (📄). If you duplicate a profile, the new profile will be stored under the same category as the profile you’ve duplicated.



### Preflight Profile Edit Buttons

To create, edit, delete, import, and export profiles, use the buttons at the bottom of the Edit dialog box.

2. Enter a name and update the description to reflect the attributes; this will help you and your customers identify what the profile is used for.
3. In the left column, select the attributes you want to edit, such as Images, Fonts, or Colors.
4. Click the button next to the problem you want to identify and enter a value, if appropriate. For example, if you want to identify any images with a resolution lower than 300 ppi, click the Images option under the profile name, and type 300 in the “pixels per inch” box in the right side of the dialog box. Choose what kind of response the profile will yield by choosing an option from the pop-up menu to the left of the entry:
  - Error: Lets you know a file has failed preflight.
  - Info: Reports on conditions found during preflight without implying any error. Consequently, the PDF isn’t regarded as “failing” the preflight test.
  - Warning: Uses a yellow alert triangle to call your attention to conditions in the PDF that, while not constituting a failure of the preflight test, may be of concern in some workflow situations.
  - Inactive: Prevents the profile from checking the attribute.
5. Make any other changes to the profile; choose Locked to prevent accidental changes.

6. Click Summary in the left pane to see a summary of the errors that the profile will identify.
7. Click OK. Acrobat adds the new profile to the list.

## Sharing Profiles

You can share a preflight profile with other users. For example, you can provide your customers with a preflight profile to ensure that their files meet your needs before they submit jobs to you. You may also choose to share profiles among workstations in your shop.

To export a preflight profile:

1. Choose Preflight from the Print Production tasks.
2. Select the profile you want to export, and then click the Options button at the top of the Preflight dialog, then choose Export Preflight Profile from the pull-down menu.
3. Specify a location for the profile, and then click Save. Acrobat creates a file with the .kfp extension. Note that the names of locked or password-protected profiles cannot be changed; they will be saved with their original names.

**Note:** You can lock the profile before packaging it to ensure that your customers won't accidentally modify it.

To import a preflight profile:

1. Choose Preflight from the Print Production tasks.
2. Click the Options button at the top of the Preflight dialog box.
3. Choose Import Preflight Profile from the pull-down menu.
4. Navigate to the saved profile, and click Open. Acrobat creates the Imported Profiles category, if it doesn't already exist, and adds the imported profile to that category.

You can also double-click a .kfp file in the Macintosh Finder or Windows Explorer, and Acrobat X Pro automatically imports the profile.

Preflight profiles are very small files. You can easily e-mail them to customers. To use preflight profiles, your customers must have Acrobat X Pro.

## Automating the Preflight Process Using Preflight Droplets

You can use a droplet to preflight multiple PDF files at once. A preflight droplet is a small application that examines a PDF file when you drag it onto the droplet icon. You can create a preflight droplet that uses a prebuilt profile or custom preflight profile that you've created. For example, the Droplet can sort preflighted PDFs into "pass" and "fail" folders. Be sure to create those two folders before making the Droplet, so you can specify those locations as part of the process. The Droplet dialog box refers to "success" and "error" folders, but these are just descriptions. The actual names of the two folders are not important; you can name them whatever you like.

To create a droplet:

1. Choose Preflight from the Print Production tasks.
2. Select a profile from the list.
3. Click the Options button at the top of the Preflight dialog box, and choose Create Preflight Droplet from the Options pop-up menu.
4. If you're using a profile different than what you selected in step 2, choose a preflight profile in the Preflight: Droplet Setup dialog box.
5. Specify the target directory for each PDF file that meets the preflight criteria, and a target directory for the file if Acrobat identifies errors during preflight. You have other options: Acrobat can copy the processed PDFs, rather than moving them; or it can save a shortcut (Windows) or an alias (Mac OS), rather than the PDF, into the target folder. You can also create reports for successful and failed files.
6. Click Save to name the droplet and specify a location for it, such as the desktop.

To use a droplet, just drag a PDF file (or multiple PDF files) onto the Droplet icon (📄). Acrobat preflights the PDF files, generates reports, and moves or copies the processed files you specified, based on the instructions in the droplet.

## TRAP PRESETS

Trap presets are exercised only when PostScript generated by Acrobat is processed by a RIP which utilizes Adobe In-RIP trapping. To create a trap preset, click the Trap Presets task in the Print Production tools. If you don't customize a trap preset, the [Default] trap preset is applied to all pages of the document. Traps and assignments apply only to an open document; they are not stored in the document. You must print from Acrobat for trap settings to be exercised.



### Creating a Trap Preset

Comprehensive trap controls let you govern trapping between objects or images. Other options let you trap images internally and trap 1-bit images to other objects. Applying these presets establishes trap parameters.

## CONVERT COLORS

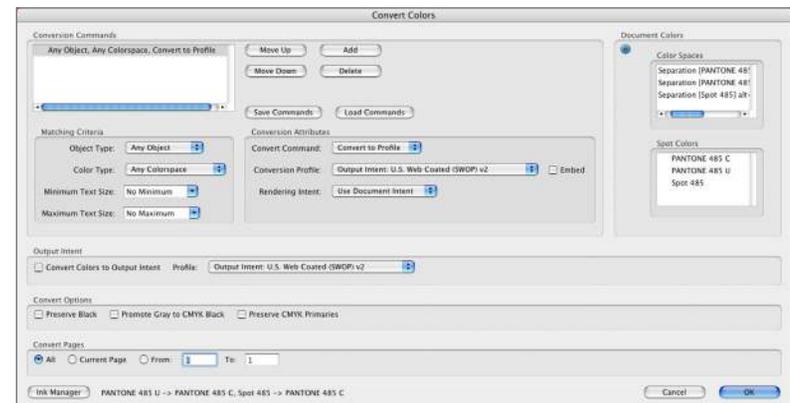
Using the Convert Colors feature, you can convert color objects in a PDF document to CMYK or another color space, or even convert CMYK content to a different color profile. Acrobat uses the source color spaces of objects in the document to determine what (if any) color conversion is required. Acrobat manages the colors using embedded profiles (if

they exist) or default or user-defined color spaces. You can convert the colors of a single page, a range of pages, or an entire document.

*Note: To convert only the color of a selected object, use the TouchUp Object tool.*

The Convert Colors function in Acrobat X Pro includes access to the Ink Manager (and the ability to permanently process Ink Manager changes), as well as several other important options:

- **Preserve Black:** If R, G, and B values are the same, this options will convert to an equivalent percentage of process black. This is especially useful for handling PDFs from Office files intended for high-end printing, to avoid multi-color output of text and other elements intended to print as black.
- **Promote Gray To CMYK Black:** Converts device gray to black-only (K-only), not to rich black.
- **Preserve CMYK Primaries:** When transforming colors to prepare CMYK documents for a different target print profile, preserves primaries. For colors with just one colorant, Acrobat uses that colorant. For colors with more than one colorant, Acrobat finds the color with the smallest color difference.



### Convert Colors

Acrobat X Pro adds many new features to the revamped dialog, including access to the Ink Manager. Click the blue arrow under Document Colors to reveal or hide the color spaces and spot colors lists.

To convert a document's colors to a different color space:

1. Choose the Convert Colors tool in the Print Production task list.
  2. In the Convert Colors dialog box, select a color type option from the list of document colors. You can specify different conversion options for different color spaces and colorants. For example, you could embed separate color profiles to calibrate color for grayscale, RGB, and CMYK objects. This strategy could be useful if your RIP color-manages PDF files or if you are sharing PDF files with others.
  3. Select an option from the Action menu:
    - **Preserve:** Keeps objects in the selected color space when you output the document.
    - **Convert:** Uses the destination space profile to convert color objects to the chosen output profile.
    - **Decalibrate:** Removes embedded profiles from the color objects in that color space.
    - **Map to:** Maps a selected spot color to a specified process plate or another spot color in the document.
1. Choose a destination profile that accurately defines the target output device.
  2. Specify which pages to convert.
  3. Specify whether to embed the destination profile. If you embed the profile as a source color space, Acrobat tags all images with the destination profile. If you embed it as an output intent, Acrobat uses the destination profile as the output intent, replacing any existing output intent.

Depending on the color spaces you select, the Convert Colors command will preserve, convert, or map color values from the source color space to the specified destination space as follows:

- Objects with untagged RGB data (DeviceRGB) convert from the working space RGB profile to the CMYK gamut of the destination space. Untagged CMYK (DeviceCMYK) and grayscale (DeviceGray) values are converted in the same way.
- Objects in device-independent color spaces (CalGray, CalRGB, or CIE L\*a\*b) can be preserved or converted. If they are converted, Acrobat uses the device-independent object's embedded profile information.
- Objects set in spot colors (including Separation, DeviceN, and NChannel color spaces) can be preserved, converted, or mapped (aliased) to any other ink present in the document. Spot colors can also be mapped to a CMYK process color, if the process color model of the destination space is CMYK. Spot colors mapped to other inks can be previewed in the Output Preview dialog box.

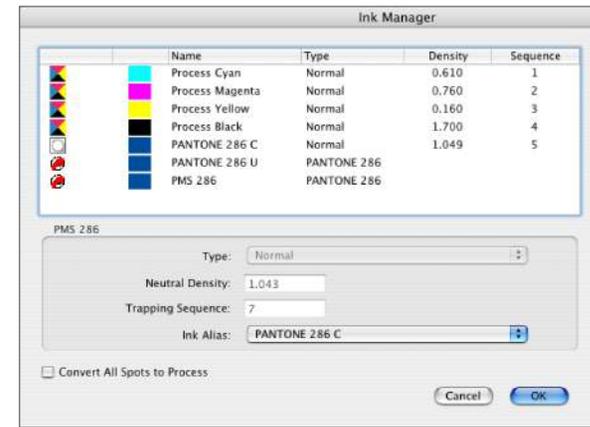
## USING THE INK MANAGER

Acrobat X Pro includes Ink Manager functions similar to the Ink Manager in Adobe InDesign CS6, but there are important differences between the two applications. In Acrobat, you have the choice of setting temporary Ink Manager options through the Output Preview panel (which will affect output from Acrobat in the current session, but will not cause a permanent change to the file), or choosing permanent Ink Manager options through the Convert Colors tool function. It's very important to recognize the differences between the two Ink Manager approaches, so that you do not inadvertently permanently change a PDF through Convert Colors, unless you truly intend to do so.

To display the Ink Manager, click Ink Manager in the Output Preview dialog box, or click the Ink Manager tool in the Print Production task list. The Ink Manager is also available when you print; to access it, click Ink Manager in the Output panel of the Advanced Print Setup dialog box.

You can perform the following tasks in the Ink Manager:

- To create an ink alias, select the spot-color ink for which you want an alias, and then choose a color from the Ink Alias menu. The ink type icon and ink description change accordingly. When you print the file from Acrobat, content using the original spot color will then be output on the new chosen plate.
- To convert an individual spot color to process, click the spot icon to the left of the color name (☐). To convert all spot colors to process, click Convert All Spots To Process. The icon next to each color changes to CMYK color mode (CMYK). Until you print the document, converting spots to process affects only the display. When you convert spot colors to process colors during printing, only the output is affected; the document remains unchanged.
- To restore spot colors, deselect Convert All Spots To Process, or click the icon to the left of the spots you wish to restore.



### Ink Manager

Remap one spot color ink to another or to a process ink.  
Also, convert all spot inks to process with one click.

**Note:** If multiple spot colors with different specifications (such as PMS 185C, PMS 185CV, and PMS 185CVU) are converted to process, color inconsistency may occur in objects using the different spot colors. If the objects are intended to be the same color but you don't have access to the original application files, remap the extraneous spot inks to one spot ink, then process the PDF as four-color process, using controls in your RIP's software, to ensure consistency of color.

## Output Preview: Using Ink Manager for Temporary Ink Mappings

The Ink Manager available in Output Preview temporarily modifies the way inks are treated for output. You can use the Ink Manager to temporarily remap a spot-color ink to its equivalent CMYK process color or to an existing spot or process color, using what's called Ink Alias. (However, you cannot map a process color to a spot ink.) The effects of ink aliasing appear on screen in Output Preview and in the printed output, but are in effect only while the PDF is open in Acrobat during the current session. A spot color aliased to a process color appears as that process color in the document during Output Preview. Spot inks mapped to process colors won't display correctly unless viewed in Output Preview mode, but they will output from Acrobat according to changes made in the Ink Manager. Keep in mind that changes chosen in the Ink Manager affect display and output only until the PDF is saved and closed. When the PDF is closed (even if it is saved),

the changes are not saved in the file. This allows you to generate correct output without permanently altering the file.

## Convert Colors: Using Ink Manager for Permanent Ink Mappings

To make Ink Manager choices permanent, use the Convert Colors function. You can make the desired choices in Ink Manager before opening the Convert Colors dialog, or launch Ink Manager from within the Convert Colors dialog, with the same outcome. The Ink Manager itself performs the same functions however you launch it, but Convert Colors finalizes the choices made in Ink Manager.

Once you've made the choices in Ink Manager, notice that the Ink Manager choices are reflected in the Document Colors window at the top of the dialog. Double-check the ink mappings, and click the Add button to add the Ink Manager instructions to the list of color conversions to be performed. The Convert Color operations are performed in the order listed, so you may need to use the Move Up or Move Down buttons to ensure that the operations are performed in the correct order. Note that you can save and load color conversion setups for common corrections, which might help your customers correct common problems before they submit PDFs for print.

Once you have chosen all the desired options in the Convert Colors dialog, click OK. Acrobat displays an alert cautioning you that this operation cannot be undone. Click the Yes button, and save the file (with a new name, if you wish to keep the original file unchanged).



### Convert Colors Alert

*Because the Convert Colors function causes permanent changes to a PDF, you are warned that a Convert Colors operation cannot be undone. However, you can choose File > Revert to return to the original state of the PDF, or close the document without saving it.*

## SET PAGE BOXES

The Set Page Boxes feature replaces the Crop Pages tool found in the Print Production toolbar in previous versions of Acrobat. The Crop Tool previously available under the Advanced Editing menu is now found in the Pages tasks in the Tool pane; its function is identical to that of the Set Pages tool. With this function, you can establish new measurements for the Crop, Art, Trim, and Bleed boxes in a PDF. While cropping does not change the actual content of the PDF (since content is not actually deleted), the changed measurements are recognized when printing the PDF from Acrobat or placing the PDF as content in InDesign or Illustrator. Some applications, however, may ignore the change to page box definition.

You can also use the Set Page Boxes feature to change the position of the CropBox, ArtBox, TrimBox and BleedBox definitions. Choose the appropriate box from the pulldown menu, and enter the offset value in the Margin Controls section of the dialog.

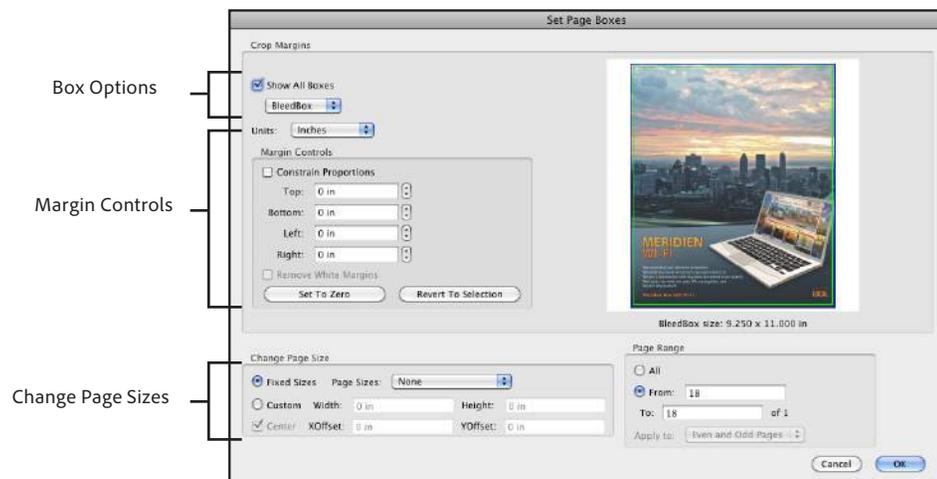
To increase the dimensions of the page, use the Change Page Size options in the Set Page Boxes dialog. Unlike the Crop function, increasing the page dimensions actually does permanently change the dimensions of the document.

### Options

You can use the Set Pages dialog box to define boundaries for trim, bleed, and art for your document.

- **Show Boxes:** Previews properties of CropBox, ArtBox, TrimBox, and BleedBox in a thumbnail; deselect this option and display just a single box at a time, using the pop-up menu below the Show All Boxes option. The dialog box previews each selected property as a differently colored box with its dimensions at the bottom. (To see these indicators all the time, you can turn them on in Preferences > Page Display.)

- **Units:** Lets you set the unit of measurement—points, picas, millimeters, centimeters, and inches—for the page dimensions of each box in the thumbnail preview.
- **Margin Controls:** Lets you crop the page (or range of pages) to specified dimensions by entering desired proportions. Note that this is a masking procedure—information outside the new margin dimensions is not discarded. Consequently, the file size is not reduced. In addition, it's possible for some applications and prepress processes to ignore the margin settings, or choose which options to respect. For example, when placed in InDesign, a PDF that uses margin controls to reduce the dimensions of the visible area can be “de-cropped” through the Show Import Options controls.
- **Change Page Size:** Enables you to extend the dimensions of the pages in the PDF. This is much like the Canvas function in Adobe Photoshop CS6—think of it as the opposite of cropping. You can only increase the page dimensions, however; you can't reduce the dimensions.



## Set Page Boxes

Display Art, Trim, Bleed, and Crop boxes as overlays on the thumbnail preview. Move the boundaries of those boxes with Margin Controls, and extend the page size by using the Change Page Size options.

1. Choose Set Page Boxes from the Print Production task list.
2. In the Set Page Boxes dialog box, choose a unit of measure.
3. Select a boundary to modify:
  - Crop defines the boundary for the contents of a page when it's displayed or printed. If not otherwise specified (for example, in the JDF settings), the crop boundary determines how page contents are positioned on the output medium.
  - Trim defines the finished dimensions of the page after trimming.
  - Bleed defines the clipping path when the page is printed professionally to allow for paper trimming and folding. Printer marks may fall outside the bleed area.
  - Art defines the meaningful content of the page, including white space.
4. In the Margin Controls area, adjust the Top, Bottom, Left, and Right margins by entering values or clicking the increment arrows. Margin values are the amount the boundary is moved inward from its initial position. Lines are displayed on the page thumbnail and in the document window to show the new margin positions.
5. Select other options, as appropriate:
  - Remove White Margins crops the page to the artwork boundary.
  - Set To Zero restores the crop margins to zero.
  - Revert To Selection reverts to the crop margin that you selected with the Crop tool.
6. Specify the desired pages to be affected by your margin choices, and click OK.

You can also crop a page by selecting the Crop tool in the Pages task list in the Tools panel and dragging a cropping rectangle on the page. Select a handle at a corner of the cropping rectangle, and drag it to the size you want. Double-click within the cropping rectangle (or press the Enter or Return key on the keyboard) to open the Set Page Boxes dialog

box. Cropping is nondestructive: it affects only display and print, but does not eliminate any content. Later, you can change the cropping specifications or return to the boundaries of the original document.

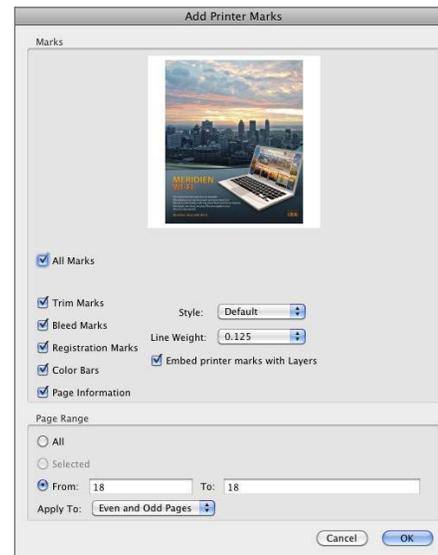
You can also right-click (Macintosh: Control-click) inside the initial cropping rectangle, and set the chosen area to CropBox or ArtBox, then use a Preflight Fixup to finalize the crop and remove excess page material.

## ADDING PRINTER MARKS

You can generate embedded printer marks in a PDF document. This will usually require that you expand the page size to accommodate the marks, using the Set Page Boxes function.

To embed printer marks:

1. Click the Add Printer Marks button in the Print Production task list.
2. Specify the pages to mark, and which marks to include; you can choose a combination of trim marks, bleed marks, registration marks, page information, and color bars.
3. Select Embed Printer Marks With Layers if you want to embed the marks in a layer in the PDF file. A layer named Marks & Bleeds is added to the document, and its visibility can be controlled in the Layers panel. If you deselect this option, Acrobat embeds the printer marks in the file without creating a new layer.



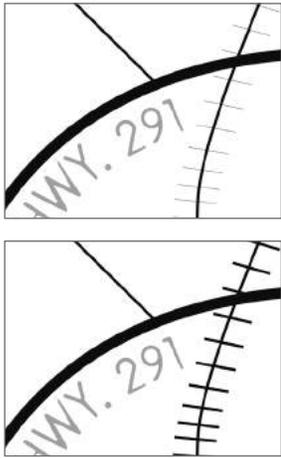
### Add Printer Marks

Acrobat can add standard trim and bleed marks to the chosen page range as well as color bars and page information. You can also choose to place marks on a separate layer.

If there's not enough room to display marks (and there usually isn't), a message alerts you that marks overlap the page, along with a suggestion to use the Crop feature to expand the page dimensions to accommodate the marks. You can use the Change Page Size controls in the Set Page Boxes dialog to accomplish this.

## FIXING HAIRLINES

Whether they're from scaled-down vector artwork, or from thin stroke-weight definitions in placed artwork, fine hairlines can be problematic in commercial printing, and might not image properly in the final printed piece. The Fix Hairlines tool can find most hairlines in the document and replace them with a heavier line. You can also thicken hairlines in Type 3 fonts and PostScript patterns.



### Fix Hairlines

Increase the stroke weight of thin vector art by setting a threshold value. Acrobat thickens only those strokes meeting or exceeding the threshold. Thickening Type 3 fonts and patterns may take longer.

1. Choose the Fix Hairlines option in the Print Production task list.
2. Enter values for the hairline width and replacement width, and select a unit of measurement.
3. Select Include Type 3 Fonts or Include Patterns to replace hairlines in Type 3 characters or patterns with the same replacement width as other hairlines.
4. Specify the page range for hairline changes. You can fix hairlines for the entire document or for specific pages.

Note: Because you can use font characters and patterns in a variety of contexts in the same document, changing the line weight may produce unexpected results. Be sure to check the results if you select these options, and adjust your selections as necessary.

## PREVIEWING AND FLATTENING TRANSPARENCY

Transparency is the visual interaction between overlapping, non-opaque colors in text and graphics. You can create transparency in Photoshop, Illustrator, and InDesign by using opacity percentages,

blending modes, feathers, drop shadows, embossing, and similar effects. When saving or exporting files with transparency, you can choose to save the file in a format that preserves live transparency, or in a format that flattens transparent objects. If your workflow is based on the Adobe PDF Print Engine, you're well equipped to handle live transparency without having to flatten at any stage. You can maintain live transparency by saving Photoshop files as native PSD; Illustrator files as native AI, and PDFs as files that are compatible with Acrobat 5.0 and above. For more information on the Adobe PDF Print Engine, see: <http://www.adobe.com/products/pdfprintengine>.

Flattening converts layered or stacked objects with transparency into a single, flat, opaque layer. Overlapping areas are replaced with objects that replicate the look of transparently interacting objects. Overprint is used if necessary to replicate transparency effects in spot color objects. Flattening is necessary for print output to PostScript or for export to any file format that does not support live transparency (for example, EPS, JPEG, and PDF 1.3). Transparency has already been flattened in any PDF file that was created by converting a PostScript file in Distiller, but Adobe Creative Suite 6 applications can export PDF files with live transparency.

As artwork becomes more complex (for example, mixing images, vectors, type, spot colors, and overprinting), so does the flattening process and its results. Because transparency flattening may create overprinting, it is important to ensure that the RIP is set up to handle overprinting properly.

Adobe recommends flattening transparency only when you are ready to print a PDF file, unless you need to flatten the PDF file earlier because of the requirements of your RIP or other aspects of your workflow. Flattening transparency makes permanent changes that cannot be undone. So defer flattening until after you perform any necessary color conversions or other edits.

Acrobat X Pro can save files in different PDF format versions, some of which retain live transparency. The PDF/X-1a format is best for placement into non-Adobe applications that require flattened transparent objects. PDF/X-4 is recommended for workflows, such as those using the Adobe PDF Print Engine, which support live transparency.

## Previewing Flattening

The Transparency Flattener Preview feature lets you see the effects of flattening settings on a PDF page. You can inspect the objects that have transparency applied, view which objects transparency flattening will affect, and flatten transparency before printing final output. Keep in mind that, once you have flattened the content of a PDF, that change is permanent: Live transparency is not restored by resaving in an Acrobat format that supports transparency (e.g., Acrobat 5 or above).

To see which objects will be affected by flattening:

1. Select the page that you want to examine, and choose Flattener Preview in the Print Production task list.
2. Choose an option from the Highlight menu (options are dimmed if there is no live transparency on the selected page). Affected content appears in red, while the rest of the artwork appears gray. You can choose which objects to preview before flattening:
  - Rasterized Complex Regions: Shows the areas that will be rasterized, based on the Raster/Vector balance control. Select Clip Complex Regions in the Flattener Settings area to minimize stitching problems.
  - Transparent Objects: Shows objects that are sources of transparency, such as those with opacity values less than 100%, or objects with blending modes, opacity masks, feathering, embossing, or drop shadows.

- All Affected Objects: Shows all objects that are impacted by transparency, including transparent objects and objects that are overlapped by, underneath, or adjacent to transparent objects.
  - Expanded Patterns: Shows all patterns involved with transparency that will be expanded during the flattening process.
  - Outlined Strokes: Previews all strokes outlined as a result of transparency. If you select Convert All Strokes To Outlines in Flattener Transparency Preset Options, all strokes will have outlines applied.
3. Move the Raster/Vector slider or enter a value to specify the degree of rasterization applied to complex areas of artwork. For high-end print output, typically the best setting is 100 (the slider is moved to the Vectors end). Depending on the complexity of the file, this setting maintains all objects as vector information whenever possible when Acrobat saves to PostScript or to other formats that require flattening. This setting may create smaller files and retain useful information for post-processing; however, files with numerous small vector-based objects (referred to as "atomic regions") may take longer to process.

Note: Moving the slider to the left all the way to zero rasterizes all content on the selected page or designated pages, whether it involves transparency or not. Rasterizing every page creates enormous files, the equivalent of creating a TIFF image of the page. Avoid this option unless the file is so complex that you cannot process it otherwise. As an alternative, consider the Print As Image setting in the Acrobat Print dialog box.

4. Specify resolutions for rasterizing complex line art and text, and gradients and meshes:
  - Line Art And Text Resolution: Lets you set the resolution applied to areas that need to be rasterized because they are too complex to be retained in vector form based on the current Raster/Vector Balance setting. Typically, you should set this resolution to at least 1200 ppi to attain high-quality text rasterization. Consider setting

this value to the output resolution of your RIP, or a value that is evenly divisible into that resolution.

- **Gradient And Mesh Resolution:** Specifies the resolution of gradients and meshes, including raster-based effects such as drop shadows, feathers, and glows, that have been rasterized as a result of flattening. The most common resolution is 300 ppi. Higher settings may slow performance without noticeably improving quality.
  - **Convert All Text To Outlines:** Keeps the width of all text in the artwork consistent by converting it to outlines. Because this option can slow processing and cause noticeable thickening on very small serif text, deselect this option for most high-end printing workflows. If you experience inconsistent text rendering on output, you may wish to convert text to outlines when it interacts with areas using transparency effects such as drop shadows. However, choosing this option converts *all* text to outlines on pages that contain transparency, not just text interacting with transparent areas. Text on pages without transparency is not converted to outlines.
  - **Convert All Strokes To Outlines:** Keeps the width of all strokes in the artwork consistent by converting them to outlines. As with converting text, deselect this option for most high-end printing workflows because it may result in a thickening of fine strokes.
  - **Clip Complex Regions:** Ensures that the boundaries between vector artwork and rasterized artwork fall along object paths. This option reduces stitching artifacts that result when part of an object is rasterized while another part of the object remains in vector form (as determined by the Raster/Vector slider).
  - **Preserve Overprint:** Preserves overprint attributes in artwork when possible during the flattening process.
  - **Transparency Blending Color Space:** If you wish to change the transparency blending color space, click the Change button and choose the appropriate color profile for your conditions.
5. Click the Save button near the top of the dialog box to preserve

any setting changes, for access in the Print dialog box or PDF Optimizer options.

6. Choose whether to store or apply the flattener settings:
- Customized settings must be saved as a flattener preset (see above), making the preset available in the print dialog.
  - While it is recommended that you apply flattening at print time, your workflow may require flattened PDFs. If so, make a copy of the file, then click Apply to flatten the PDF using the selected settings. When you save the file, these changes are permanent.



### Flattener Preview

Test various flattening scenarios and preview the results. The OK and Apply buttons have very different functions: OK exits the Flattener Preview and stores the results for future previews (if the settings have been saved as a named preset). Apply processes the settings in the Flattener Preview dialog box, and flattens the file accordingly. You cannot undo Apply, but the file is not permanently altered until you choose File > Save.

### Applying Flattener Settings

Keep in mind that applying flattener settings is the same as flattening transparency—a permanent change that cannot be undone. Alternatively, you can flatten transparency in a copy of the document—without affecting the original PDF file—using PDF Optimizer; see the next section “Flattening Transparency Using PDF Optimizer.”

To apply the flattener settings to the PDF document:

1. In the Flattener Preview dialog box, specify flattener settings.
2. In the Apply To PDF area of the dialog box, select the page or pages to apply the flattener settings to.
3. Click Apply. You cannot undo this operation.

## Flattening Transparency Using PDF Optimizer

To create a copy of the PDF file with flattened transparency, use the Transparency panel in PDF Optimizer. PDF Optimizer applies transparency settings to all pages in the document before applying any other optimization settings you have selected. To flatten transparency using PDF Optimizer:

1. Choose File > Save As > Optimized PDF.
2. Select the Transparency option in the left column. If the document has flattener settings associated with it, Acrobat uses these settings as the initial values in the Transparency panel. Otherwise, it uses the settings last used in the panel.
3. Choose a flattener setting.
4. Click OK to permanently flatten transparency in the file. You are asked to provide a name and location for the new file.

**Note:** When you click OK in the PDF Optimizer dialog box, PDF Optimizer applies all the selected settings in all panels, whether you have recently applied them or not. To prevent accidental changes, review the settings in the PDF Optimizer panels before clicking OK. For more information on PDF Optimizer settings, see “Using PDF Optimizer to optimize files for print” in this chapter.

## Reducing File Size

You may be able to reduce the file size of a PDF file simply by using the Save As command. This command rewrites the file, removes duplicated or unnecessary information, and does not require you to regenerate the PDF file from the source file.

If you wish to further reduce the file size, choose File > Save As > Reduced Size PDF. This also gives you the option to change the version compatibility of the PDF, and uses a preset optimization setting. Select the version compatibility that you need (or select the default option to Retain Existing format), and click OK. Note that reducing the version may change the content of the file. For example, converting a file from PDF 1.4 (Acrobat 5.0) to PDF 1.3 (Acrobat 4.0) compatibility requires transparency to be flattened; this can sometimes result in *increased* file sizes if image compression and resolution are retained.

## Using PDF Optimizer

Acrobat PDF Optimizer allows you to unembed fonts, resample and re-compress image content, change the version compatibility, remove components you no longer need in the file, and flatten transparency. The options you choose in PDF Optimizer depend on your workflow. For high-resolution printing, use caution when downsampling or compressing images, unembedding fonts, or flattening transparency. More aggressive downsampling and compression are only appropriate for a file that is intended for on screen viewing.

**Note:** Optimizing a digitally signed document invalidates the signature. Optimizing a PDF/X file can invalidate the file if the resulting document's fonts are not embedded.

To optimize a PDF file:

1. Choose File > Save As > Optimized PDF.
  2. Click Audit Space Usage to view a report of the total number of bytes used for specific document elements. The results appear in actual bytes and as a percentage of the total file size. Auditing the document can help you decide which options to select.
- **Images:** Choose options according to your output workflow. This option downsamples or compresses color, grayscale, and black-and-white images. Downsampling reduces file size by lowering the resolution of images. This is accomplished by averaging the colors

of several pixels and merging them into larger pixels of the average color. Compression reduces file size by eliminating unnecessary pixel data. In general, JPEG gives better results on images such as photographs with gradual color transitions. ZIP is the better choice for illustrations with large areas of solid, flat color or patterns made up of flat colors. For monochrome images, JBIG2 compression, which is available in PDF Optimizer but not in Acrobat Distiller, is superior to CCITT. If you're using JPEG or JPEG2000 compression, specify maximum quality because JPEG and JPEG2000 compression methods are typically lossy, resulting in some permanent data loss. For JPEG2000 compression, you can also specify lossless so that no pixel data is removed. Compression for monochrome images is lossless, except for JBIG2 compression, which provides both lossy and lossless modes of compression.

- **Fonts:** Choose whether to unembed fonts to reduce file size. However, for high-end printing, Adobe recommends embedding all fonts. Check to make sure the font supplier allows embedding.
- **Transparency:** Flatten transparency in the document, using default options for Low, Medium, and High Resolution. If you saved a custom flattener style in the Flattener Preview, it's available here. For high-quality printing, it is best to use the High Resolution option or create a custom flattener style appropriate for your particular workflow system.
- **Discard Objects:** Remove objects, such as embedded page thumbnails, bookmarks, and document tags from the PDF document. There are also options to convert smooth lines to curves and merge image fragments. Several of the options allow you to delete content that has nothing to do with imaging the document, such as JavaScript actions, search indexes, and form actions. The option to flatten form fields does not delete form field content, but flattens and embeds that content as visible artwork.

- **Discard User Data:** Delete comments, file attachments, private data embedded by other applications, and hidden layer content.
- **Clean Up:** Remove unnecessary items from the document. By default, only elements that do not affect functionality are selected. If you are unsure of the implications of removing other options, you should use the default selections. You can choose from these options:
  - **Object Compression Options:** Lets you remove all compression or compress document structure. If you've chosen compatibility with Acrobat 6.0 or later, you can also compress the entire file or leave the compression unchanged.
  - **Use Flate To Encode Streams That Are Not Encoded:** Analyzes if applying compression to a particular stream will reduce file size. Compression is applied only if file size will be reduced.
  - **In Streams That Use LZW Encoding, Use Flate Instead:** Replaces LZW encoding with Flate encoding.
  - **Remove Invalid Bookmarks/Remove Invalid Links:** Eliminates bookmarks and links that point to deleted pages or to other invalid destinations.
  - **Remove Unreferenced Named Destinations:** Deletes named destinations that the PDF document does not reference internally. Because this option does not check for links from other PDF files or websites, it may not fit in some workflows. As with links and bookmarks, deleting these aspects of the PDF may impair navigation when viewed on screen, but has no adverse effect on imaging.
  - **Optimize The PDF For Fast Web View:** Restructures a PDF document for page-at-a-time downloading (byte-serving) from web servers. This option has no benefit for printing, so it can be set on or off.

3. Click OK, name the new optimized PDF file, and specify a location for it. The original PDF document is unchanged.

For information on specific PDF Optimizer options, see Complete Acrobat X Pro Help, available in the Help menu.

## USING THE JOB DEFINITION FORMAT (JDF)

Job Definition Format (JDF) provides a streamlined way to create an efficient, automated workflow based on Adobe PDF. The features in Adobe Acrobat X Pro enable you and your customers to create JDF files on the desktop to preserve information that can be used later in the workflow.

### About JDF files

JDF is a job-ticketing file format that provides a mechanism to specify and control all of the processes in print production, from job submission through prepress, press, and postpress. As a device-independent standard, JDF can describe every part of a job (cover, inside pages, binding, number of copies, and so on) and link management information systems (MIS) with production workflow systems—no matter what tools are used, provided that the systems are JDF-aware. JDF places individual actions into a greater context, so that each element is recognized as part of the whole. In the same way that Adobe PostScript describes pages and Adobe PDF describes documents, JDF describes jobs.

Acrobat X Pro JDF files include product information, such as job ID, number of copies, binding settings, and customer information; section data for each section of the job, such as the section name, number of pages, page size and orientation, scaling percentage, and inks; and file data for each native or PDF file assigned to a section, including the file name, document name, and page range. You can add more job data to JDF files as more information is obtained about the job's specifications. You can create a high-level JDF file that describes only a rough outline of the job; as you add information, the outline can evolve into a detailed product description.

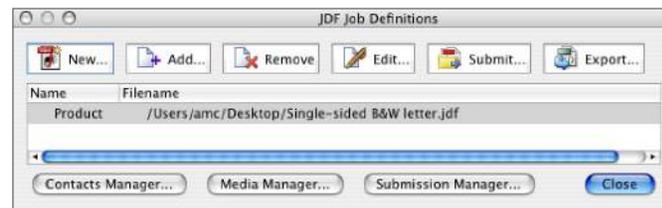
You can embed PDF creation settings (.joboptions files) and preflight profiles in a JDF to ensure the integrity of the files before the job enters print production. Acrobat X Pro compares the job description with the properties of the assigned files and reports any discrepancies in page size, inks, or the number of pages available in the associated documents.

After preflighting and verifying the JDF file and the PDF files associated with it, you can package the files into a single MIME (Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions) file. The MIME specification lets you format non-ASCII messages so they can be sent over the Internet, ensuring the file links are retained during transfer. Your customer can submit the JDF package to your production site as an e-mail attachment, send it to the URL of a CIP4-compliant system, or drop the files on an FTP site.

### Creating JDF files

To create a JDF file in Acrobat X Pro:

1. Choose JDF Job Definitions in the Print Production task list. Acrobat displays the JDF Job Definitions dialog box, where you can access all JDF functionality in Acrobat X Pro.



#### JDF Job Definitions

Use this dialog box to access all JDF functionality in Acrobat X Pro.

2. Choose from the following options:
  - Click New to start creating a new JDF definition.
  - Click Add to import a JDF definition.
  - Click Remove to delete a definition.

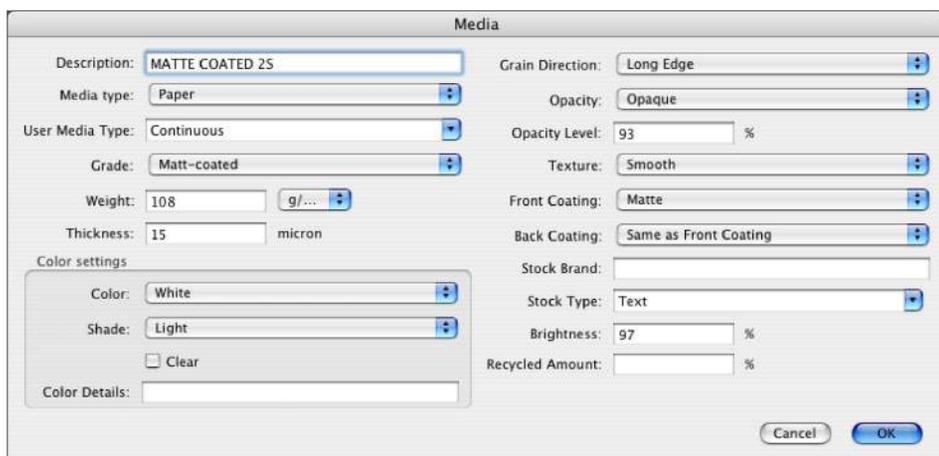
- Use Edit to start editing a definition. Use the Contacts Manager, Media Manager, and Submission Manager buttons to edit an existing JDF file, as described in the corresponding sections that follow.
- Click Submit to submit the current PDF.

## Contacts Manager

Use the Contacts Manager to record contact information for everyone involved in the project. Click Contacts Manager in the JDF Job Definitions dialog box, and then click Add to add a new contact. You must have at least one contact person, and that person must be defined as the customer.

## Media Manager

Use the Media Manager to specify media, or paper stock, for print jobs in Acrobat X Pro. Click Media Manager in the JDF Job Definitions dialog box. Your customer can specify media with as much information as is known; you can also add relevant information later. Alternatively, your customer can leave the media type unspecified, and then you can create and select the appropriate media settings. You can also embed media settings in a JDF template for your customer to use. You can add or modify media settings at any point during the production cycle.



### Media Manager

*You can specify settings for media to be used in the job, and these settings will be incorporated into the JDF definition you create.*

## Submission Manager

Before you prepare a JDF file, use the Submission Manager to configure the submissions workflow. Submissions provide a method for converting, testing, and packaging files for delivery to a service provider. Click Submission Manager in the JDF Job Definitions dialog box. Then click Add in the Submission Manager dialog box to create a new configuration. In the Submission Setup dialog box, name the configuration, choose a default conversion setting, and select a submission method—for best results, always check Submit as MIME package. In Pre-submission Options check the options Verify that PDF files are consistent with the JDF job definition and Preflight PDF files. The first option compares the JDF file with the associated files and verifies that they exist and are linked to the appropriate URL; any inconsistencies in page sizes, inks, and the number of pages available result in an error. The Preflight PDF files option preflights the PDF files using the preflight profile specified in the JDF file (if there isn't one specified, the option uses the one specified in the Submission Setup dialog box).

## Configuring JDF files

To configure a new JDF file:

1. Create a new JDF file, as described in "Creating JDF files."
2. Click New in the JDF Job Definitions dialog box. Then select New to create a blank JDF file.
3. Choose an option:
  - Select Based On The Document: [Filename] to create a JDF file based on the PDF file you have open. Acrobat automatically fills in the Section and File data, but you must manually complete the product data.
  - Select Based On The Job Definition: [Filename] to create a JDF file using an existing JDF file as a template. Settings for preflighting and PDF conversion are embedded, but you must manually enter Product, Section, and File data.

4. Enter a name for the JDF file and specify a location for it. Then, click Create And Edit to open the Edit JDF Job Definition dialog box.
5. Enter the product information on the General tab. Enter billing information and add contacts on the Customer Info tab.

## Adding a Section

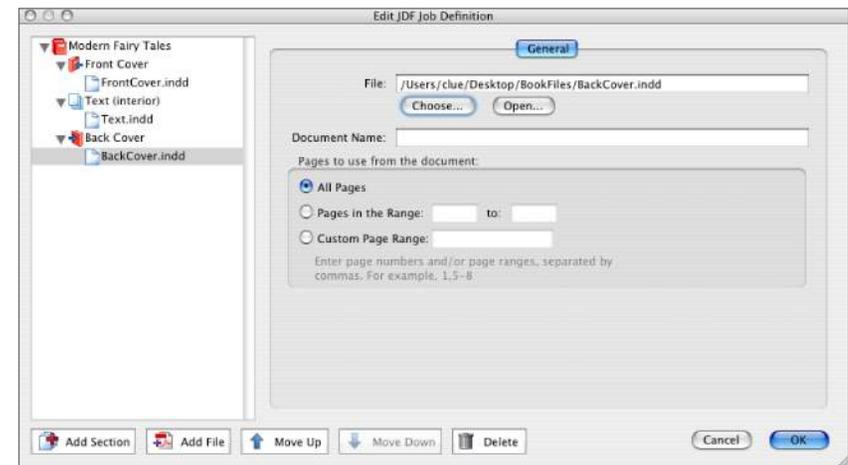
Each JDF file must have one or more sections. Create a section for each file or for each set of files that has a different page size and orientation, media settings, duplex policy, scaling percentage, or set of inks.

To add a section, click Add Section at the bottom of the Edit JDF Job Definition dialog box. Name the section and enter its settings. Use the Ink tab to specify the inks used: select a color standard, such as CMYK, and then add any spot colors (including varnishes) used in the section.

To add a PDF file or native file to the section, click Add File, and then browse to the file you want to add. Add files in sequential order. To change the order, select a file name and click Move Up or Move Down.

## Submitting the Job

When you've added all the sections and the files, arranged the files in sequential order, and included all the information you have, you are ready to submit the job. Select the JDF file in the JDF Job Definition dialog box, and click Submit. Acrobat X Pro converts PDFs and native InDesign files listed in the JDF file into PDF files using the PDF conversion settings specified in the JDF file. If the verification option is selected in the submission settings, Acrobat compares the JDF file to the content of the files and reports any inconsistencies. If the Preflight option is selected, Acrobat preflights the file using the Preflight profile specified in the JDF file or the submission settings and displays a detailed preflight report. Then Acrobat packages the file and submits it as a MIME file or uploads it to the location specified in the Submission Setup dialog box. For more information, as well as case studies, see the JDF white paper at <http://www.adobe.com/products/jdf>.



## Including InDesign Files in a JDF Job Submission

*In addition to handling PDFs, a JDF job submission can include native InDesign files. Acrobat earmarks InDesign files with the specified JDF information, which is incorporated when you export PDFs from InDesign.*

## JDF Templates

You can create a JDF file for your customer to use as a template. Templates include media specifications, PDF conversion settings (formerly called Acrobat Distiller job settings), and preflight profiles. Configure the JDF file, save it, and send it to your customer. To create a JDF file, your customer should begin creating a new JDF file, select the option "Based on the job definition" and navigate to the JDF file you provided.

## EDITING PDF FILES

PDFs are intended to be final files; they're not "working files." While it's best to make necessary changes to the original application file (such as an InDesign or Illustrator document), you don't always have that luxury. If you must perform edits to a PDF, work on a copy of the original file, be mindful of any alerts you receive, and perform a Save As to economize the file when you're done. Know that there are limits to the kinds of edits you can perform and be especially vigilant when editing text: some fonts do not allow editing or re-embedding, and the file's integrity is lost as a result. In addition, even minor text edits can result in

odd spacing or other problems, depending on how the PDF was created.

To edit text and graphics in a PDF, use the Edit Document Text tool and the Edit Object tool. Both tools are available in the Content tasks in the Tools pane.

## Editing Text

The Edit Document Text tool is used for selecting and modifying text. Along with selecting and modifying text, users can add new blocks of text. Users can wrap text on a line during editing, if "Enable Text Word Wrapping" is selected in the TouchUp Preferences. Keep in mind that, to edit text, you must have the correct fonts active on your system. But even if you have the necessary font, you may or may not be able to edit the text and re-embed the font used in the text, depending on the permissions attached to the font used in selected text. What you can do depends on the font licensing permissions, which vary according to vendor. Acrobat respects the flag within the font that governs these permissions, and it cannot override any limitations on text editing or font embedding.

To edit text, choose the Edit Document Text tool in the Content tasks in the Tools pane. To determine the text size and font used, select the text and right-click (Windows) or Control-click (Mac OS), then choose Properties from the context menu that appears. If you do not own the font, ask the customer to make the edits in the original application file, and then send you a new, corrected PDF.



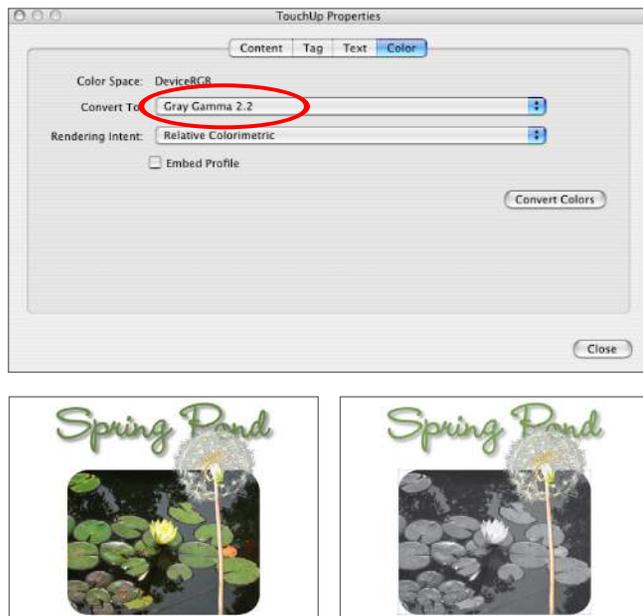
## Edit Document Text Tool

*Before editing text, select the target text with the Edit Document Text tool and right-click (Windows) or Control-click (Mac OS). Choose Properties from the context menu to check the text's attributes and editing and embedding permissions. If the font cannot be re-embedded, your edits may cause problems with imaging, because the font won't be embedded after edits.*

You can perform some other text edits without needing to tackle font embedding; you can change the color, size, scaling, strokes, and other attributes without risking font permissions. Choose the options you'd like in the TouchUp Properties dialog box, and click Close when you have finished. You're limited in your color choice selections, however, and cannot specify CMYK or spot colors.

## Edit Object Tool

The Edit Object tool lets you make limited edits on images and vector art in a PDF. For example, you can perform color conversions on a selected image without using Photoshop. Select the image with the Edit Object tool, right-click (Windows) or Control-click (Mac OS), and choose Properties from the context menu. Click the Color tab, and select an option from the Convert To pop-up menu.



### TouchUp Properties

The Color tab includes a wide range of color conversions for the selected content. Here, the image has been easily converted to grayscale without having to open Photoshop.

You can also use the Edit Object tool to select most images and vector art in a PDF for editing in external applications. For example, to remove a blemish on a model's face, click to select the image with the Edit Object tool, and right-click (Windows) or Control-click (Mac OS) to choose Edit Image from the context menu that appears. If it isn't already running, Adobe Photoshop CS6 launches; it opens the image for editing. The image that appears is not the original image, but it contains the actual image information as contained within the PDF—not resampled or resized. You can add layers in Photoshop to accomplish the needed edits, but you must flatten the file before saving it (File > Save) to write the corrected image back into the PDF.

If you encounter an alert cautioning you that the image uses transparency and that you cannot add layers, just click OK. Some image content is not editable with the Edit Object tool. For example, attempting to edit a duotone image will yield an error: "Could not complete your request because a color was specified using an

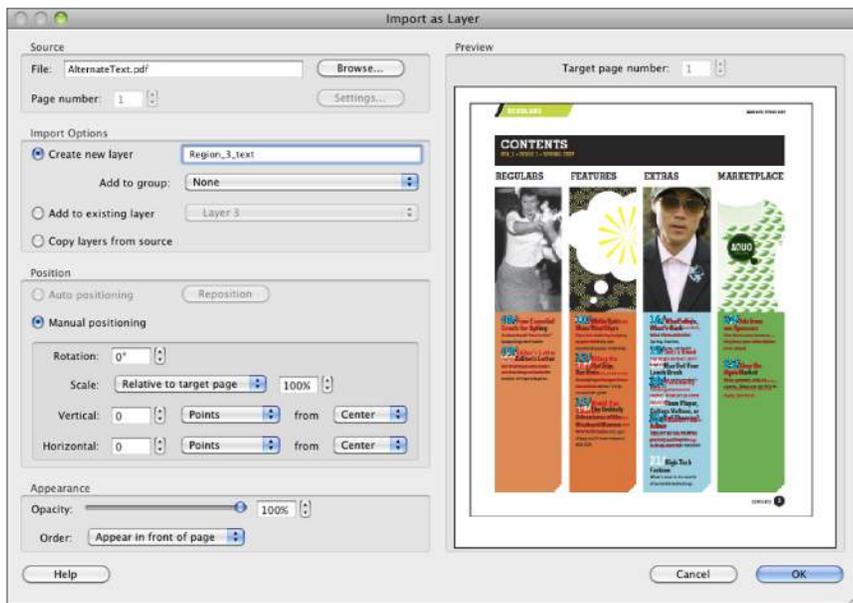
unsupported color space." As a result you cannot open or edit the image.

The Edit Object tool also provides a method for extracting graphic information for use in other applications (provided you have the right to do so). Instead of choosing File > Save to return the content to Acrobat, choose File > Save As, and save the image as any format to create a file on disk. In addition, you can use the Edit Object tool to place an image, flip images or other objects in different directions, as well as rotate selected objects. You can also use the Edit Object tool to reposition objects by dragging or nudging with the arrow keys, or to delete objects in a PDF.

To edit vector art in a PDF—for example, to fix a logo that's incorrectly set to overprint—select the art with the Edit Object tool, right-click (Windows) or Control-click (Mac OS) and choose Edit Object from the context menu that appears. You may need to Shift-click to select multiple components of a complex object, or select pieces by clicking and dragging a marquee. If it isn't already running, Adobe Illustrator CS6 launches; it opens the vector artwork for editing. Perform edits as you would with any other Illustrator file. You can add new objects to the existing Illustrator layer during editing, but you cannot add new layers (or the content won't be written back into the PDF). When you've finished, choose File > Save to write the corrected data back into the PDF. You can also choose File > Save As to save the artwork as an Illustrator file for use in other situations.

### Importing a PDF into another PDF as a layer

1. Open the Layers Navigation panel (View > Show/Hide > Navigation Panes > Layers).
2. In the Layers panel, click on the Options menu pull-down (☰), and choose Import as Layer. Name the layer, and choose options for position, scale, opacity — even position the layer behind the existing contents.



### Importing a PDF as a Layer

Select another PDF to import as a layer, and choose scaling, stacking order, position, and opacity options.

### Using Other Applications to Edit PDF files

Using the content editing tools is the recommended method for editing content in a PDF. Still, be cautious about accidentally modifying content, and carefully examine edited PDFs to ensure that no unintended changes have occurred.

Adobe does not recommend that you attempt to edit PDFs in Adobe Illustrator. While Illustrator will open a PDF, it is intended to open only PDFs that were created by Illustrator with the Preserve Illustrator Editing Capabilities option. PDFs created by other applications—even Adobe InDesign—are not intended to be edited in Illustrator. Font embedding may be damaged, content may become corrupted, and there is no guarantee that such edits won't impair file integrity. It's still best to return to the originating application, perform the necessary edits there, and generate a new, corrected PDF.

## COMMENT AND REVIEW FEATURES IN ADOBE ACROBAT X PRO

Use the commenting and reviewing features in Acrobat X Pro to communicate with your customer about issues identified during preflighting, or to get final approval on changes you've made to the document before printing. You can include preflight results as comments in the file (see "Saving preflight results" in this chapter), use the highlighting and drawing tools to illustrate issues, and add any other instructions or information in comments you add manually. Then use PDF Optimizer to create a smaller copy of the file that you can e-mail to your customer (see "Using PDF Optimizer to optimize files for print" in this chapter). Enable the PDF file for review in Adobe Reader 8 or later, so that your customer will have commenting and drawing tools available.

### About Comments

You can add comments in a PDF file without affecting the output or the content of the file. (Note, however, that placing comments inside the trimbox of a PDF/X file will invalidate its compliance with the PDF/X specification. Consequently, comments should be made on a copy of a PDF/X-compliant file.) These comments include notes, highlights, text edits, and stamps; you can also attach sound, text, or image files to the document to convey your message. For example, you can indicate an error or misalignment by circling it, add a stamp that says you've approved a page, or record a message explaining that a certain element on a particular layer is causing print problems. You can also attach other files within a PDF document, such as preflight settings, preflight reports, or job information.

E-mailing or uploading a PDF file with comments is less expensive and more efficient than the hard-copy process of printing a proof, marking it up, shipping or faxing it to the customer, having the customer go through the physical document to find the comments, and then going through the whole process again in reverse. The e-mail- or server-based PDF review process also gives you the ability to request and receive approval from the customer, using the stamp tool or the digital-signature feature,

which can identify the person, date, and time for your records. For information on using commenting tools in Acrobat, see Complete Acrobat X Pro Help in the Help menu.

## Allowing multiple reviewers to mark up a PDF

If you wish to facilitate PDF markup with your clients, you have the choice of setting up a Shared Review (recommended) or an e-mail-based review. The Shared review approach offers the advantage of storing comments in a central location, and allowing reviewers to view each other's comments, which can reduce redundancy in markup. An e-mail review is easier to set up (since it does not rely on a central server for comment storage), but because reviewers cannot see other reviewers' comments, there is a likelihood of redundant markups. Additionally, the review initiator must collect individual participants' comments and combine them on a "master" PDF to have a realistic overview of all reviewers' markups.

### Shared review

Acrobat X Pro allows you to host files for shared reviews (at no charge) on Acrobat.com. You can also allow reviewers to open and share the PDF in a live chat session.

To initiate a Shared Review:

1. Choose Comments > Send for Shared Review. Select the first pull-down option to have Acrobat.com manage the review. Note that you can select the check box to enable the file for page view sharing and chat collaboration
2. The recipient will receive an e-mail with a link to Acrobat.com to download the review PDF.
3. Reviewers will need to create a Acrobat.com login to participate. Acrobat will create a new file titled [Filename]\_review.pdf locally and all comments from reviewers will be managed through Acrobat.com and tracked in the Acrobat Tracker under the Comments menu.

4. Participants can add comments with Acrobat (or Reader) Comment and Markup tools. In the review PDF highlight bar area, choose Check for New Comments, or add your own comments and click Publish Comments to add to the shared review.

### E-mail-based review

To send a file for E-mail Review to users of Adobe Reader 8 or later, choose Comments > Attach for E-mail Review in Acrobat X Pro. Acrobat opens the Send By E-mail For Review wizard. Follow the directions of the setup wizard, which guides you through selecting a PDF for e-mail review, choosing participants, and even automatically generates an e-mail message that instructs recipients how to participate. You can also customize the e-mail message if you wish.

For more detailed information on setting up e-mail-based or shared reviews, see Complete Acrobat X Pro Help.

### Exporting and Importing Comments

You can choose to send a file containing only the comments (rather than the commented PDF itself) to a customer when the PDF file is too large to send as an e-mail attachment. After you add your comments to the PDF file, export them in Form Data Format (FDF), or XML-based FDF (XFDF). FDF files contain only comments and entries in form fields, and thus are smaller than PDF files. The customer then imports the comments into their own copy of the PDF for viewing.

When an FDF file is opened or imported into a PDF document, the comments appear in the proper places on the pages. This means that FDF files from multiple reviewers can be imported into one central copy of the PDF document, and the comments of all reviewers can be viewed at once.

To export comments as an FDF file:

1. Open the PDF document and add your comments.
2. Choose Export All to Data File from the Options pull-down at the top of the Comments list (☰-).

3. Choose whether to export an FDF or XFDF file, name the exported comments file, and then click Save.

To import comments into a PDF document, double-click the FDF file (indicated by the .fdf file extension) or XFDF file. Acrobat automatically opens the original PDF file (if it has not been moved or renamed) and imports the comments from the FDF file. If Acrobat is unable to locate the associated PDF, you will be asked to locate it manually. Alternatively, you can open the original PDF document and choose Import Data File from the Options pull-down menu in the Comments pane, select the FDF file containing the comments, and click Select.

### Summarizing All Comments in a PDF

Summarizing comments is a convenient way to get a synopsis of all the comments associated with a PDF document. The summary function creates a new PDF document that is independent of the one that contains the original comments.

To summarize comments in a PDF file, choose Create Comment Summary from the Options pull-down menu in the Comments pane. Select options in the Summarize Options dialog box, and click OK. You can choose to create only a list of comments, or have Acrobat create a summary that contains a thumbnail of each page, with connecting lines identifying the source of each comment. Acrobat generates a new PDF of the summary, which you can save, print, or send to your customer—just like any PDF file.

To print a summary of comments in a PDF file, simply print the summary PDF file you've already created. Or in the original commented PDF, choose Print With Comment Summary from the Options pull-down menu in the Comments pane, select layout options, and click OK.

### Collaborate Live

Collaborate Live is a free service available in Acrobat X Pro, which allows you to invite up to two other participants to review a PDF in an online session. In a Collaborate Live session, the participants view a document with a live chat window. When sharing pages, the document

page and magnification is shared with all participants, so that everyone sees the same part of a document. When one participant changes the view magnification, or navigates to another page, all participants are taken to the new magnification or page.

To initiate a Collaborate Live session:

1. Choose Comment > Review > Collaborate Live. The Acrobat.com screen is displayed; click the Next button.
2. Sign in with your Adobe ID and click Sign In. If you don't yet have an Adobe ID, click the Create Adobe ID hyperlink to create one.
3. A form appears, containing e-mail text and fields for recipients' e-mail addresses. Enter recipients' addresses in the To and CC fields, and modify the e-mail text if you wish.
4. By default, the PDF is sent as an attachment to the e-mail. Alternatively, you can check the option to store the file on Acrobat.com and just include a hyperlink to the file.

Acrobat adds the suffix "\_collab.pdf" to the filename, saves this new PDF in the same directory as the original file, creates the e-mail, and launches your default e-mail program. You can further edit the text of the e-mail before you send it, if you wish. Recipients must have Acrobat X Pro or Adobe Reader 9 to participate.

The recipient opens the PDF attached to the e-mail (or follows the hyperlink to the file on Acrobat.com). The recipient can sign in as a guest or use their Adobe ID, if they have one (an Adobe ID is not required). Any participant can click Start Page Sharing to begin the collaborative review. The view is synchronized for all participants: any participant can navigate through document pages and change magnification, and the view changes for all participants.

All participants can enter text in the Document Chat window, but if a participant adds markups such as sticky notes, other participants cannot see them. Each participant can save the PDF with their own markups, however. The advantage of Collaborate Live is that all participants can

see the same content onscreen simultaneously, while chatting (or talking by telephone), without having to subscribe to a dedicated Web conferencing service.

## Acrobat.com and Related Free Services

Acrobat.com is a free set of online services, including file sharing and storage (up to 5GB), PDF conversion from popular file formats, the Buzzword collaborative online word processor, and ConnectNow web conferencing. You can create and share documents, communicate in real time, and simplify working with others. Services include:

- **Share:** By sending URLs instead of e-mailing large attachments, you and your team can access files from any computer in the office or on the road.
- **Adobe Buzzword:** A new online word processor, perfect for writing reports, proposals, and anything else you need to access online or work on with others. It looks and behaves like your normal desktop word processor, but it operates inside a web browser, so there's no installation required.
- **My Files:** Store any kind of file online (not just PDFs) for access from anywhere.
- **Create PDF:** Upload up to 5 Microsoft Word, Excel, and other file formats to create PDFs online. If you need more conversions, purchase Acrobat X Pro or Standard, or sign up for the Create PDF Online service.
- **ConnectNow:** Free online Web conferencing for you and two other participants. Other options are available through Connect Pro, with programs for those wishing to allow up to 15 participants, or commercial versions of Connect that allow up to 1,500 participants and provide call-in and session recording features. For more information on these programs, go to the Connect Pro web page:  
<http://www.adobe.com/products/acrobatconnectpro/>

## PRINTING PDF FILES

Most of the options in the Adobe Acrobat X Pro Advanced Print Setup dialog box are the same as for other Adobe applications. When you're ready to print the document, the Acrobat X Pro Print dialog box contains the settings you need to ensure successful output.

To print an Adobe PDF document:

1. Choose File > Print.

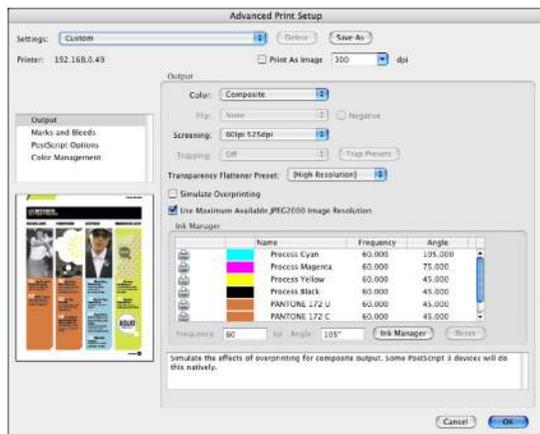


### Print Dialog

Choose page range and scale factor, as well as options for printing the content of comments and forms. Click the Advanced button for more options.

2. Choose your output device from the Name menu.
3. Specify which pages to print, page-scaling options, page rotation, and other basic settings. Acrobat displays a preview of the document that reflects the settings you've selected.
4. To view printing tips, click the Printing Tips button to launch a browser and access helpful tech notes on the Adobe website. Click the Summarize Comments button to generate a summary of comments in the PDF.

For more output options, click the Advanced button.

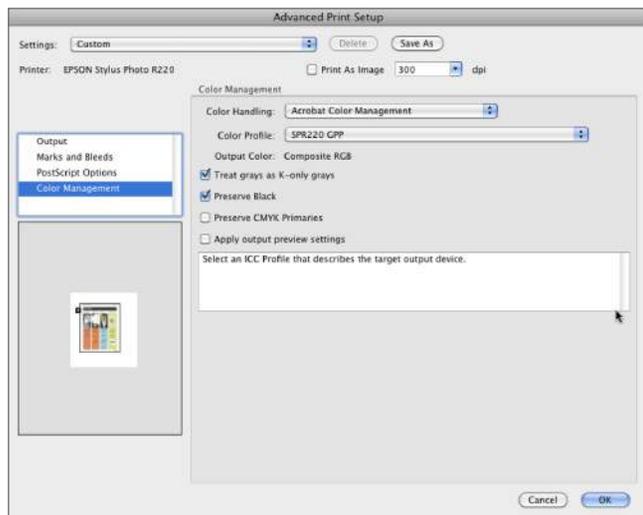


### Advanced Print Setup

Choose options for composite or separated output (depending on the output device), as well as marks and bleeds, PostScript options, and Color Management controls.

- In the Output panel, specify settings for color separations, Transparency Flattener preset, screening, and whether to simulate overprint. You also have access to Ink Manager through this panel. Select the option to Print As Image only if the file is too complex to print normally. If you are outputting separations, click the printer icon to the left of an ink name to suppress (or toggle on) printing for that color. In Composite mode, select the option to Simulate Overprinting to more realistically render overprinting attributes, if you are printing to a device that does not natively support overprint. Choose the appropriate Transparency Flattener preset. Note that frequency and angle options will most likely be overridden by functions in the imaging device. Click the Ink Manager button to remap spot colors or to convert spot colors to process for output.
- In the Marks and Bleeds panel, select the marks you want to print. Choose from several styles of marks—InDesign, Illustrator, and QuarkXPress. Include registration marks, color bars, and page information.
- In the PostScript Options panel, select the settings for your workflow. Consult the documentation for the printing device to determine the appropriate PostScript options for correct output.

- In the Color Management panel, set options for handling color:
  - Color Handling:** Determines if color management is used and whether it happens in the application or at the printing device.
    - Acrobat color management:** Enables you to select an ICC Profile that describes the target output device.
    - Printer Color Management:** Sends the document's color data along with the document profile directly to the printer and lets the printer convert the document to the printer color space. The exact results of the color conversion can vary among printers.
    - Same as Source (No Color Management):** Discards all color management information and sends device color to the printer.
  - Color Profile:** Determines the profile used for handling colors during printing.
  - Output Color:** Specifies the output color space based on the settings in the Output panel of the Advanced Print Setup dialog box.
  - Treat grays as K-only grays:** Renders gray-equivalent content (such as R128-G128-G128) as black-only output. Also prevents RGB black text from being rendered as a rich black.
  - Preserve Black:** Ensures that, in any conversion from one CMYK profile to another CMYK profile, 100% black remains K100.
  - Preserve CMYK Primaries:** When transforming CMYK content for a different target print profile, attempts to preserve primaries (such as C100 or M100-Y100). For single-colorant objects (such as M100), Acrobat uses that colorant. For objects using more than one colorant (such as C100-Y100), Acrobat attempts to minimize any color difference.
  - Apply Output Preview Settings:** Simulates the print space defined by the device identified in the Simulation Profile menu of the Output Preview dialog box. (Choose Advanced > Print Production > Output Preview.) This option allows you to simulate the appearance of one device on another.



### Color Management

Choose color handling options, color profiles, and profiles for proofing simulation.

9. If you want to save the settings you've selected in the Advanced Print Setup dialog box, click Save As, and then name the settings file. If you do not save the settings, Acrobat retains them only as long as the document is open.

Click OK to close the Advanced Print Setup dialog box, and then click OK to print.

### Setting PostScript Options

You can set options for a particular PostScript printer, such as how to handle nonresident printer fonts and how to download Asian fonts. In addition, if a PDF file contains device-dependent settings, such as halftones and transfer functions, you can send these settings in the PostScript output to override the default settings in the printer. To use these options, you must be connected to a PostScript printer or have a PostScript printer driver installed with a PPD selected.

To set PostScript options in the Advanced section of the Print dialog box:

1. Choose a PostScript printer as your target printer and choose File > Print. In the Print dialog box, click the Advanced button and choose PostScript options in the dialog:
  - Send at Start: Downloads any fonts and resources that are used on more than one page at the beginning of the document. (This is the fastest option, but it uses more printer memory.)
  - Send by Range: Downloads fonts and resources with the first page that uses them, and removes them when they are no longer needed. (This option uses less memory.)
  - Send for Each Page: Downloads the fonts and resources with each page on which they are used. (This option uses the least amount of printer memory.)
3. For Print Method, choose the PostScript level of the output device.
4. Select other options in the PostScript panel as desired:
  - Download Asian Fonts: Prints documents with Asian fonts that are not installed on the printer or embedded in the PDF file (they must be present on the system).
  - Emit Undercolor Removal/Black Generation: Retains undercolor removal (UCR) and black generation settings if they exist in the PostScript file. Black generation calculates the amount of black to be used when trying to reproduce a particular color. UCR reduces the amount of cyan, magenta, and yellow components to compensate for the amount of black added by the black generation. Because it uses less ink, UCR is generally used for newsprint and uncoated stock.

- **Emit Halftones:** Retains any halftone information in the file. Note that your RIP may override this information.
  - **Emit Transfer Functions:** Retains the transfer functions traditionally used to compensate for dot gain or dot loss that may occur when an image is transferred to film. With this option, Acrobat keeps the transfer functions as part of the file, and applies them to the file when it is output.
  - **Emit Flatness:** Uses the currently chosen flattener setting.
  - **Emit PS Form Objects:** Generates PostScript form objects for Form XObjects within the PDF file. This option may reduce the overall size of the print job, but it will increase the printer memory required. Form XObjects are used to create a single description for complex objects, such as background objects, that can appear many times in a single document.
  - **Discolored Background Correction:** Addresses severe discoloration issues that might occur during printing, such as white backgrounds printing as yellow.
  - **Always Use Host Collation:** Allows Acrobat to handle collation without invoking the collation capabilities of the chosen printer driver. Printer collation sends two separate jobs to the printer. Host collation allows Acrobat to perform the collation and send a single job to the printer.
5. Click OK to exit the PostScript Options dialog box. Then click Print in the main Print dialog box.

## Creating a PostScript File

Acrobat X Pro can convert a document to a PostScript file, which can include full Document Structuring Conventions (DSC) comments or not, depending on how you create the file.

To create a PostScript file for imposition or other print processes, you can attain better results by using the Save As command. Choose

PostScript from the Save As Type (Windows) or Format (Mac OS) menu. You can include full DSC comments and other advanced information, including device dependency, font inclusion, comments, and language level. For more information, see "Converting to PostScript or Encapsulated PostScript (EPS)" in Complete Acrobat X Pro Help.

In Windows only, you can print a PostScript file from Acrobat through the Print dialog box by selecting the Print To File option. Acrobat creates a device-dependent PostScript file, which may not fully meet DSC conventions. It is recommended that you use the Save As command to create a PostScript file for compatibility with more devices and workflow systems.

## Working with Asian fonts

Select Download Asian Fonts in the Advanced Print Setup dialog box if you want to print a PDF document with Asian fonts, but the fonts are not installed on the printer or embedded in the document. (Embedded fonts are downloaded whether or not this option is selected.) You can use this option with a PostScript Level 2 or later printer. To make Asian fonts available for downloading to a printer, make sure that you have downloaded the fonts to your computer using the Custom or Complete option during installation of Acrobat.

If Download Asian Fonts is not selected, the PDF document prints correctly only if the referenced fonts are installed on the printer or embedded in the document. If the printer has similar fonts, it substitutes those. If there are no suitable fonts on the printer, it prints text in Courier.

If Download Asian Fonts does not produce the results you want, print the PDF document as a bitmap image. Printing a document as an image may take longer than using a substituted printer font.

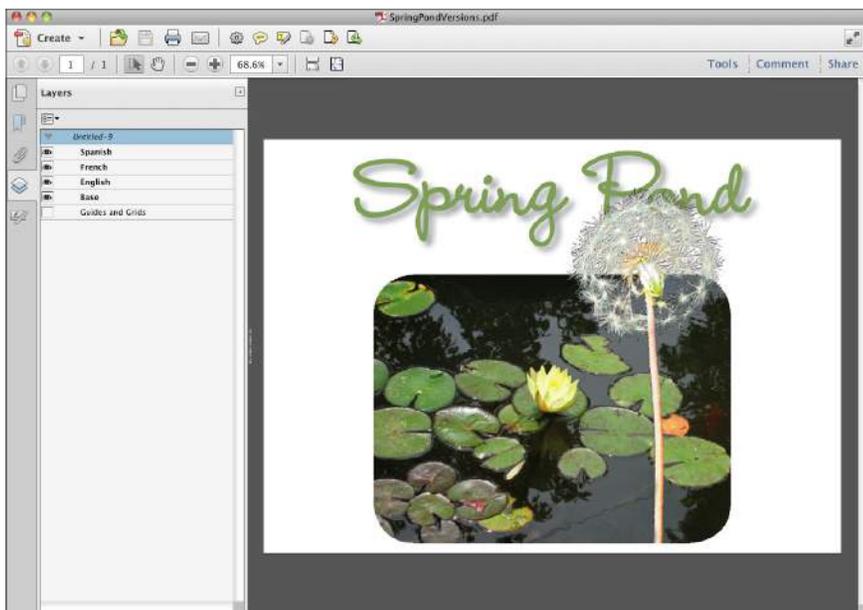
**Note:** Some fonts cannot be downloaded to a printer, either because the font is a bitmap or because font embedding is restricted in that

document. In these cases, the printer substitutes the font, and the printed output may not match the screen display.

## Printing documents with layers

Many documents include layers, which provide flexibility by separating content. For example, graphics may be on one layer and text on another. A multilanguage file may contain separate layers for the text for each language. You can export layers that are created in Illustrator CS6 and InDesign CS6 into a PDF 1.5 and later file.

Acrobat X Pro can show, hide, and print layers that were created in the original application. You can rename and merge layers in Acrobat, change the properties of layers, and add actions to layers through the Options menu on the Layers tab. Layers are supported in PDF 1.5 and later. Typically, if a layer is visible, it prints.



### Layers

Acrobat 6.0 and later support layers. Both InDesign and Illustrator can create layered PDF files, which can be useful for managing multiple versions of content. Click the eyeball icon to control the visibility of a layer, and check the layer options to control printing of layers. To merge layers, choose Merge Layers from the Options pop-up menu at the top of the Layers pane.

To view layers in a PDF document:

1. Click the Layers tab or choose View > Show/Hide > Navigation Panes > Layers. Note that the "eyeball" visibility icon is not the only influence over whether a layer prints. In the Layers panel, select a layer, right-click (Mac: Control-click) and choose Properties to determine whether a layer is set to print.
2. Use the eye icon to control the visibility of a layer's content. This setting temporarily overrides the settings in the Layer Properties dialog box. You can also double-click the layer name to toggle visibility.
3. From the Options menu on the Layers tab, choose one of the following options:
  - List Layers For All Pages: Shows every layer across every page of the document.
  - List Layers For Current Page: Shows layers only on the currently visible page.
  - Reset To Initial Visibility: Resets layers to their default state (as saved in the original file).
  - Apply Layer Overrides: Displays all layers, regardless of the settings in the Layer Properties dialog box. You must first turn off this command before you can click the eye icon to hide a layer. You can edit layer properties in the Layer Properties dialog box, but changes (except changes to the layer name) do not take effect until you choose Options > Reset To Initial Visibility.

Note: When you save the file, the visibility of the layers automatically reverts to the initial visibility state. If you want to save a different view of a layered PDF file, you must change the default state of the layers in the Layer Properties dialog box.

To edit layer properties, choose Layer Properties from the Options menu in the Layers tab, or right-click on the layer name and select Properties (Mac: Control-click). You can rename layers and set the default initial visibility, print, and export states. You can combine the default state setting, the visibility settings, and the print setting to control when a layer is visible and when it prints. If a layer contains a watermark, for example, you may want the layer to be invisible on screen but always print and export to other applications. The layer does not need to be listed in the Layers tab, because Acrobat handles all the state changes automatically.

**Note:** A locked icon in the Layers tab indicates that a layer is for information only. You can't change the visibility of a locked layer; the only property you can change is its name, unless you unlock it.

To merge one or more layers in a PDF document, choose Merge Layers from the Option menu in the Layers tab, and then specify the target layer into which they merge. Merged layers acquire the properties of the target layer. Once you have merged layers, you cannot restore the original layers. You can also flatten the layers in a PDF document, consolidating all the visible layers. When you flatten a layered PDF document, Acrobat does not preserve content that is hidden or layers that are not visible. Once you have flattened layers, you cannot restore the original layers. You can edit content in a layered PDF file just as you would in any other PDF document. The selection tools recognize and select any content that is visible, regardless of whether the content is on a selected layer.

Normally, when you print a PDF document that contains layers, only the content that is visible on screen prints. However, the creator of a layered PDF document can make exceptions—for example, stipulating that layered watermarks must print or confidential information must not print—regardless of its visibility on screen. If the document is designed to print differently from the way it currently appears on screen, a warning message appears in the Print dialog box. The thumbnail view of the page in the Print dialog box always shows the page as it will print.

To change print overrides for a layer:

1. Click the Layers tab.
2. Select a layer and then choose Layer Properties from the Options menu (or right-click).
3. In the Layer Properties dialog box, choose one of the following from the Print menu:
  - **Always Prints** forces the layer to print.
  - **Never Prints** forces the layer not to print.
  - **Prints When Visible** matches printed output to on screen visibility.

## LINKS TO KNOWN ISSUES AND RESOURCES

KnowledgeBase: <http://www.adobe.com/support/acrobat/>

Print Resources: <http://www.adobe.com/print/>

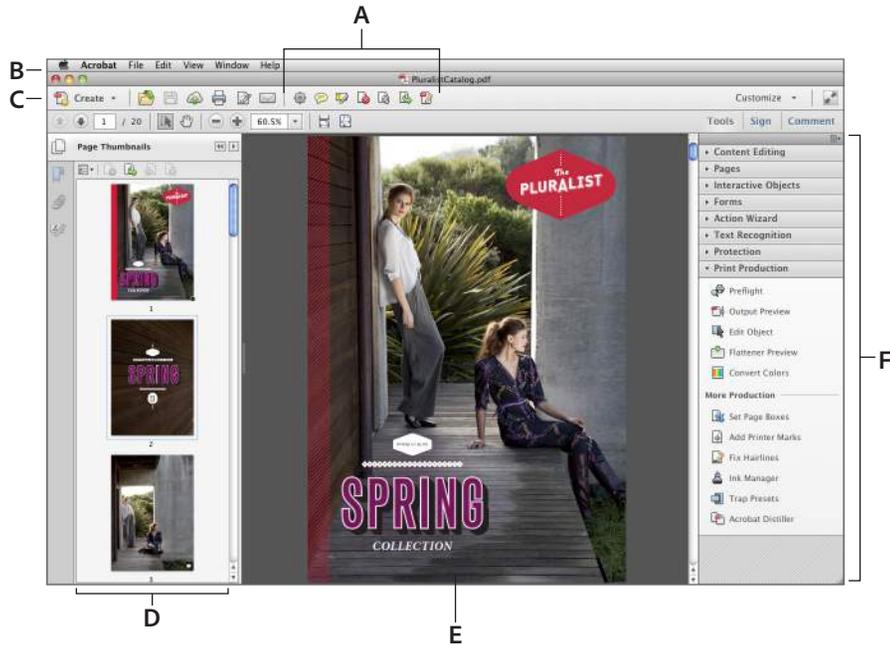
Adobe PDF Print Engine: <http://www.adobe.com/products/pdfprintengine/>

Partner Program for Print Professionals:

<http://www.adobe.com/go/printserviceprovider>. Find out about the wide range of benefits, including technical support, software, and promotional assistance Adobe has to offer print and pre-press professionals.

# Addendum: Adobe Acrobat XI Pro

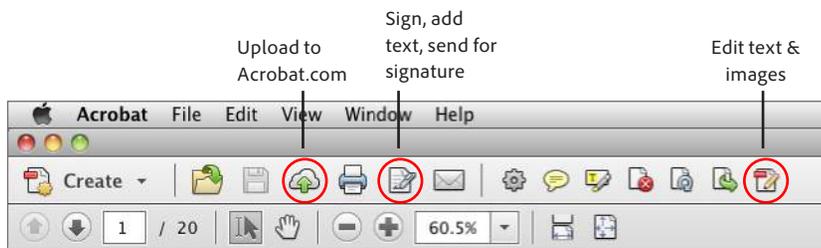
While the user interface has not changed substantially, Acrobat XI Pro adds powerful and flexible editing capabilities.



A. Quick Tools B. Menu bar C. Toolbar D. Navigation pane  
E. Document pane F. Tools pane

## TOOLBAR CHANGES

When you launch Acrobat XI Pro, you will notice three new tools in the toolbar:



- **Upload to Acrobat.com:** Store PDFs and access them from Acrobat Pro, Adobe Reader, or the mobile Reader, using your Adobe ID. You can preview multiple pages by hovering over a file name, and display a full preview by clicking a file name.
- **Sign, Add Text, Send For Signature:** Easily sign a document, or invite others to sign a document; powered by Adobe EchoSign.
- **Edit Text & Images:** Allows editing of text as well as raster and vector graphics. The "Edit Object" tool has been moved to the Print Production tools.

## IMPROVED TEXT AND IMAGE EDITING

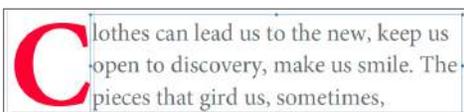
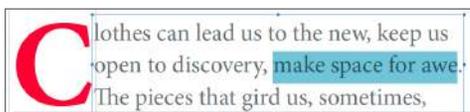
The new Edit Text & Images tool (📄✍️) in the toolbar serves for selecting both text and graphic content in a PDF. When you select the tool, gray selection borders appear around text areas and raster images. Although the selection borders do not appear around vector content, such content is also editable.

## Editing Text

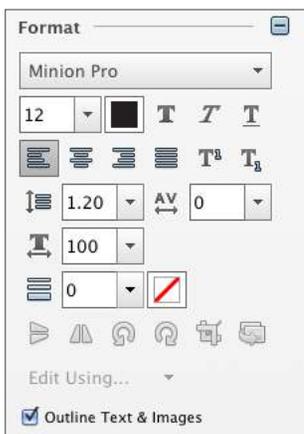
Using the Edit Text & Images tool, select text within any area and use the intuitive tools in the Content Editing pane to change text attributes. Text reflows within its container, although if you need to make edits that affect text that's divided into segments, you will have to address each segment separately.



**Editing Selected Text**  
*While some long passages may be broken into segments, text can be reflowed easily.*

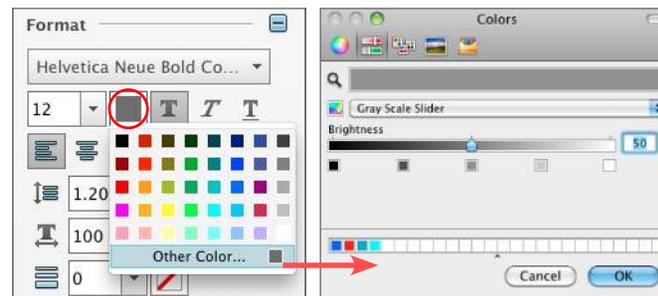


There are some limitations; you cannot assign a spot color to text, and any color you choose in the Colors panel will be RGB, unless you choose from the Grayscale options available through the “Other Color” option (you can use Convert Colors to change RGB content to CMYK). There is no method for combining the text containers.



**Expanded Text Options**  
*Extensively modify text with new features in Acrobat XI.*

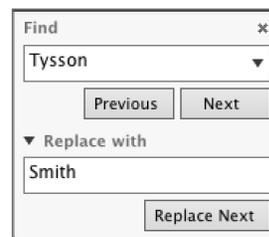
If you don't see all the options in the Content Editing pane, click the plus sign to the right of the Format label. There are options to change the font, text size, and alignment (if the necessary font is not active on your system, you are warned that editing will result in font substitution). You can change line spacing by specifying a value between 1 (100% of text size) to 5 (500% of text size). You can control tracking, and apply horizontal scaling to text, and apply a stroke to text (again, you can only choose an RGB color unless you choose from the Grayscale options available through the “Other Color” option).



**Change Color**  
*With the exception of grayscale values, color choices are RGB. If you need CMYK content, use the Convert Colors feature to convert content. There is no option to apply a spot color.*

## Find and Replace

The Find function in Acrobat XI (Edit > Find) now includes a Find/Replace feature. Enter the replacement text and click Replace button to replace one instance. Once you've replaced one instance, the button then displays “Replace Next”—if you need to replace multiple instances, continue clicking the Replace Next button until all instances are fixed (there is no option to replace all instances).



**Find & Replace**  
*Click the triangle next to “Replace with” to enter replacement text. Click the “Replace Next” button to step through the text and replace text (blue highlighting is just for clarity)*



Replacing text with longer content may cause the segment containing the text to expand and overlap an adjacent frame. Since there is currently no way to combine text frames, you have two options. You can manipulate the frames themselves to avoid overlap, or you can copy the text from one frame, and paste it into another frame.

### William H. Halbertson

Please join me in welcoming William H. Halbertson, our new Vice President of Operations for the Southern Region. Halbertson comes to us from our Cincinnati office

Mr Halbertson has over thirty years of experience in the construction industry. He has overseen projects ranging from hospitals to sports stadiums. Tyson will be overseeing our expansion into shopping mall construction in South America. He is fluent in Spanish and Portuguese, and we know that he will be a tremendous asset in that effort.

### Overlapping Frames

*If text editing causes frames to overlap, you will have to expand or reposition the frames, or copy/paste the text into a single existing frame to combine the text.*

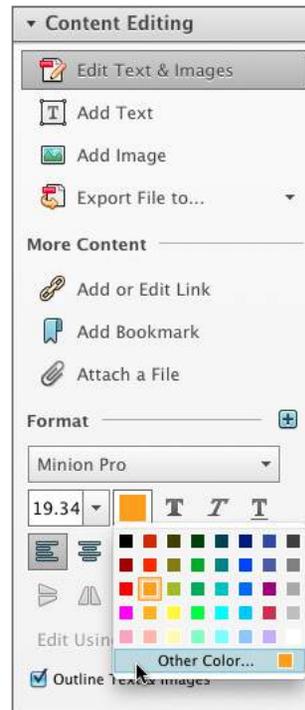
## Add Images and Text

To reveal the Content Editing tools, click "Tools" on the right side of the interface to reveal the Task panes. Click Content Editing to see the Add Text and Add Image tools.

- **Add an image:** Choose the Add Image tool, then navigate to select a Bitmap, GIF, PCX, JPEG, JPEG2000, TIFF, or PNG image. Scale an image proportionally by dragging on a corner handle. To distort an image, drag on a handle on a side of the image.

Images can be CMYK, RGB, grayscale, or bitmap. Transparency is only supported in PNG files. While PSD is not supported, you can use layered TIFFs, but if the bottom layer of a TIFF contains transparency, the transparency will be lost; transparent areas will become opaque white.

- **Add text:** Choose the Add Text tool, then click (or click and drag) in the page. To change the dimensions of the resulting frame, select the Edit Text & Images (not the Add Text tool or Select Object tool) and drag on a handle on the edge of the frame. As with the Edit Text & Images tool, you can use only RGB colors. However, if you choose from the Grayscale values available through the "Other Color" option of the Font Color picker, it will be rendered as black-only.



### Color Choices

Click the icons at the top of the Colors panel to change modes. All are RGB, with the exception of the Gray Scale Slider, which is black-only.



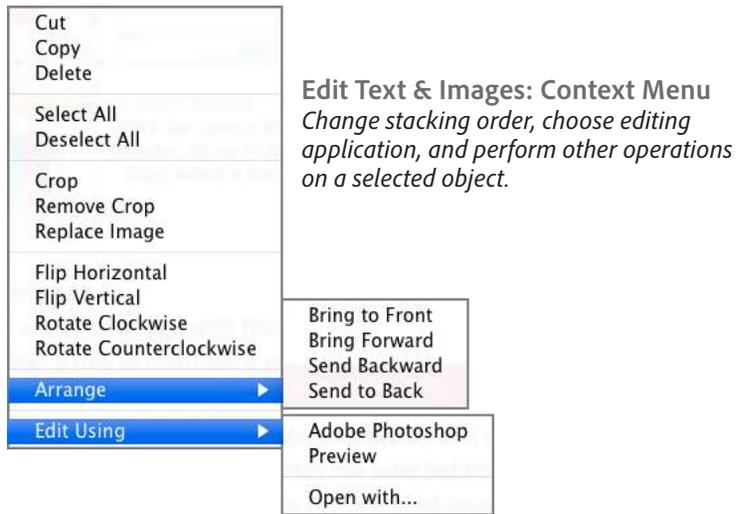
## Editing Graphics

When you select an image or vector graphic with the Edit Text & Images tool, the Tools pane displays a row of controls; if you don't see it, click the plus sign by Format in the Content Editing panel. These options allow you to flip an image vertically or horizontally, rotate it clockwise or counter-clockwise, and crop it. You can also replace an image; Acrobat deletes the selected image and allows you to import a replacement. The replacement image must be a Bitmap, GIF, JPEG, JPEG2000, TIFF, or PNG file.

Scale an image proportionally by dragging on a corner handle. To distort an image, drag on a handle on a side of the image. Choose from pull-down by Edit Using to choose an image editing program. The option to Outline Text & Images turns off and on a gray highlight edge around text and images when the Edit Text & Images tool.



You can also perform edits to graphics through options available in a context menu. Select a graphic, then right-click (Mac: Control-click) to display additional operations.



## Using the Edit Object Tool

While the Edit Text & Images tool provides many of the functions you might want to perform in a PDF destined for print, the Edit Object tool (now in the Print Production tools) adds additional capabilities. It allows you to convert an object's color profile to another profile, change the rendering intent, Promote Gray to CMYK Black, preserve CMYK primaries, and convert colors.

The Edit Object tool also provides contextual options, including the ability to change stacking order, examine object properties, and save the selected object as a PDF.

## CUSTOMIZE TOOLS AND TOOL PANES

Acrobat XI allows you to streamline production by customizing the tools available in the main toolbar or the Quick Tools. You can now also create custom task panes.

### Adding to the Main Toolbar

To add view and navigation tools to the main toolbar, choose View > Show/Hide > Toolbar Items and select from the Page Navigation, Page

Display, and Select & Zoom submenus. Select an individual tool to add it, or select the "Show All" option at the bottom of each submenu.



### Custom Tools Added to Main Toolbar

Add frequently-used tools for viewing and navigation.

### Adding to Quick Tools

To add tools to the Quick Tools Bar, click the Edit Current Tool Set icon (⚙️) in the Quick Tools Bar.

In the left column of the Edit Tool Set panel, select a tool panel to display its contents, choose a tool you wish to add, then click the Add button (➕). You can also add vertical dividers to separate tools in the customized tool set by clicking the Add Divider button (▭). To reposition a tool icon, select it in the Quick Tools preview at the top of the panel, and use the Move Left (←) or Move Right (→) buttons.

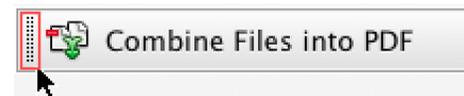


### Customized Quick Tools

Add editing and commenting tools to the Quick Tools for easy access.

When you are finished adding to the Quick Tools Bar, click save in the Edit Tool Set module.

You can also drag tools directly from the Tools pane into the Quick Tools Bar. Click on a tool panel to reveal the individual tools, then drag a tool by its vertical "grabber strip" and deposit it in the desired position in the Quick Tools Bar (tools that are already in the Quick Tools Bar will not display a grabber strip).



To reset both the Quick Tools Bar and main toolbar to their original configurations, right-click anywhere in either toolbar and choose Reset Toolbars. There is no way to reset just one of the sets of tools. If you are currently using a Custom Tool set, the Reset command has no effect.

## Creating Custom Tool Sets

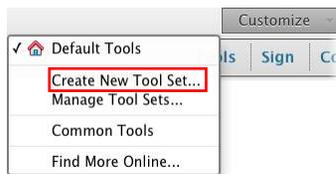
Acrobat XI now gives you the ability to combine tools into a custom tool set. You can add entire tool panels (such as “Content Editing” or “Pages”), and you can create a custom panel within a set, and add individual tools from various existing tool groups to that panel.

As you start creating custom tool sets, these terms may be helpful:

- An individual *tool* is a single task, such as the “Add Text” entry under Content Editing.
- A Tool *panel* is a collection of individual tools (for example, the Content Editing panel).
- The *pane* that opens when you click “Tools” is the Tools Pane.
- A *tool set* is a customized collection of tool panels.
- The Customize > Create New Tool Set options also include the ability to add tools to the Quick Tools Bar.

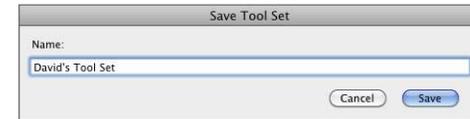
To combine existing complete tool panels into a custom tools set:

1. From the Customize pull-down, choose Create New Tool Set.

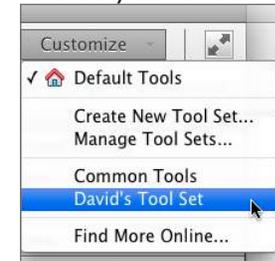


2. Click on the title of the first tool panel you wish to add to the new tools set (for example, Forms), then click the Add to Custom Tools Pane button (📌).
3. To reposition a panel within the pane, use the Move Up (⬆️) and Move Down (⬇️) buttons.

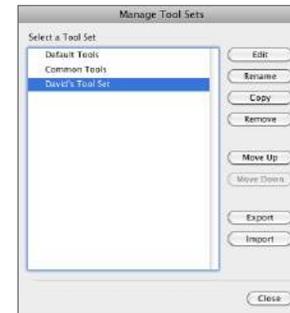
4. To add a horizontal divider, click the Add Divider button (📏).
5. To delete a panel, select it and click the Remove button (🗑️).
6. When you are finished, click Save and name the new tool set.



7. To display a custom tool set, choose from the Customize menu.



8. To edit, delete, import, or export tool sets, choose Manage Tool Sets from the Customize pull-down. You can change a tool set's position in the list with the Move Up and Move Down buttons, edit its contents, copy it to start another tool set, or delete it. You can also export custom tool sets you have created for workgroups or customers.



**Managing Tool Sets**  
*You can edit a tool set, rename or remove it. You can also export and import custom tool sets.*

## Creating a Custom Tool Panel

Within a custom tool set, you can create custom tool panels composed of tools you choose. Custom tool panels cannot be freestanding panels; they have to be part of a custom set.

1. From the Customize pull-down, choose Create New Tool Set.
2. Click the Add Panel button (📁).
3. Name the panel before you start adding tools.



4. Select individual tools from the tool panels in the left column, and click the Add to Custom Tools Pane button (➕) to add them to the new panel you are creating.
5. If you wish to add a text field to provide information or instructions, click the Add Instruction button (📄).



### Adding Text to a Custom Tool Panel

*This provides a method for you to include instructions or procedures related to a tool or to the panel as a whole.*

6. To reposition a tool within the panes, use the Move Up (▲) and Move Down (▼) buttons.
7. To add a horizontal divider, click the Add Divider button (≡).
8. To delete a tool, select it and click the Remove button (🗑️).
9. When you are finished adding tools to the new panel, click Save. You are prompted to name the Custom Tool Set that will contain the panel.
10. From the Customize pull-down, choose the name of the custom tool set.

## IMPROVED EXPORT TO OTHER FORMATS

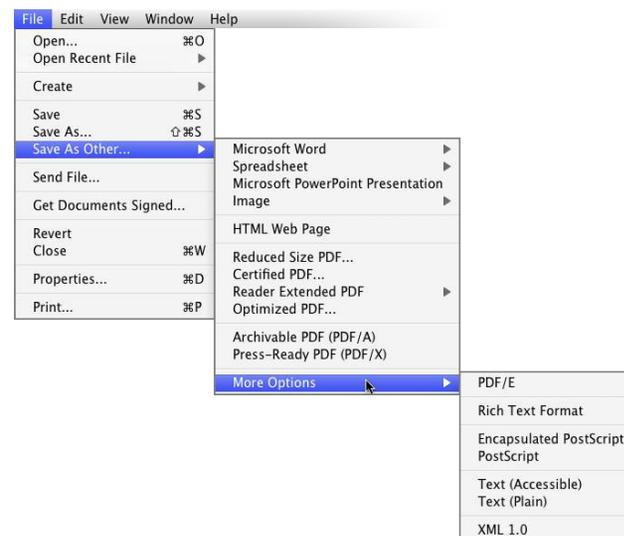
If you are asked to supply a Microsoft Word, Excel, or PowerPoint document from a PDF (even if it was created in a non-Microsoft application such as Adobe InDesign or Illustrator), Acrobat XI offers improved conversion capabilities.

Choose File > Save As, and from the Format list, choose the appropriate format. The options include:

- Excel Workbook
- XML Spreadsheet 2003
- PowerPoint Presentation
- Word 97-2003 Document
- Word Document (.docx)
- Rich Text Format

You can also choose Export File in the Content Editing panel to access the same export option.

Additional export options are available through submenus in the File menu.



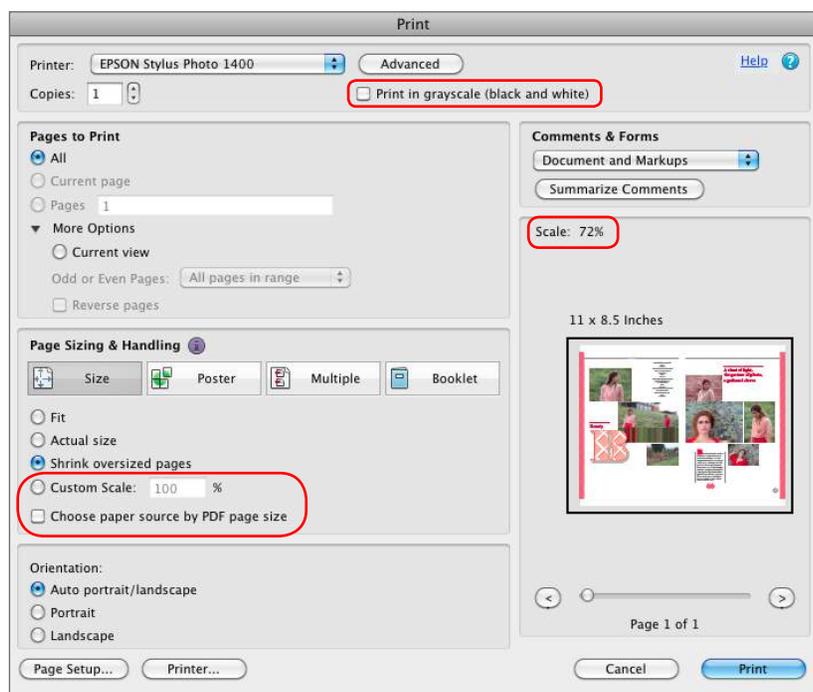
While the “reverse engineering” is very good, don’t expect it to be perfect; you will likely have to perform some adjustments in the native applications. And some features will not survive the round trip: hyperlinks in a PDF should become true hyperlinks in the resulting Word file. And any slide transitions in a PDF should survive the conversion to PowerPoint (any animations would have already been lost in the process of creating the original PDF). Be prepared to massage text flow and font usage. Whatever the results, they’re more efficient than recreating the document from scratch.

## PRINT PRODUCTION TOOLS

Acrobat XI provides useful refinements to the Output Preview functions, and adds a number of features to the print dialog.

### Print Dialog

The Print dialog adds options to print in grayscale, and to choose a custom scale factor.



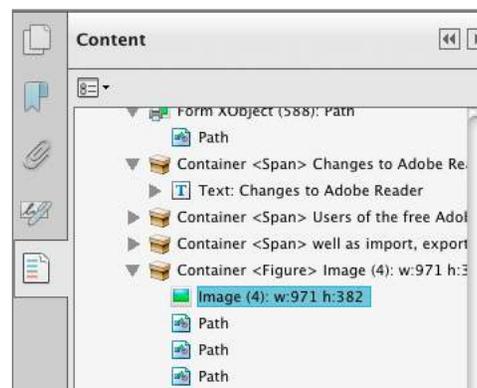
Previously, scaling was available only through Page Setup. Note that the scale factors chosen in the Print dialog and any scale factor invoked in Page Setup are cumulative, not redundant; e.g., setting the Custom Scale to 50% and then setting the Scale to 50% in the Page Setup will result in printing the PDF at 25% of its original size. The current scale factor is displayed above the document thumbnail.

### Edit Object Tool

The Edit Object Tool is now in Print Production (moved from previous Content tool panel). The tool still provides contextual options to edit images and vector objects in Photoshop and Illustrator, but transform functions such as rotate and flip functions are now handled by the new Edit Text & Images tool. The Edit Object tool improvements include:

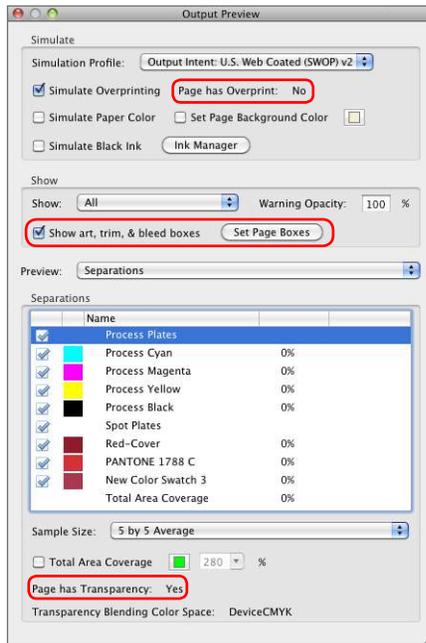
- More visible selection marquee around selected objects.
- A new option to save Selection and Save Page as PDF
- Color options in Object Properties: Color tab now includes options to Preserve Black, Promote Gray to CMYK Black, Preserve CMYK Primaries, and Decalibrate Colors (removing embedded profiles).

The Edit Object tool also provides a live connection to the list of objects displayed in the Content panel (View > Show/Hide > Navigation Panes > Content). In complex pages, you may find it easier to select an object in the Content list so you can edit it.



**Content Panel**  
*Target individual objects and rearrange or delete them.*

## Output Preview

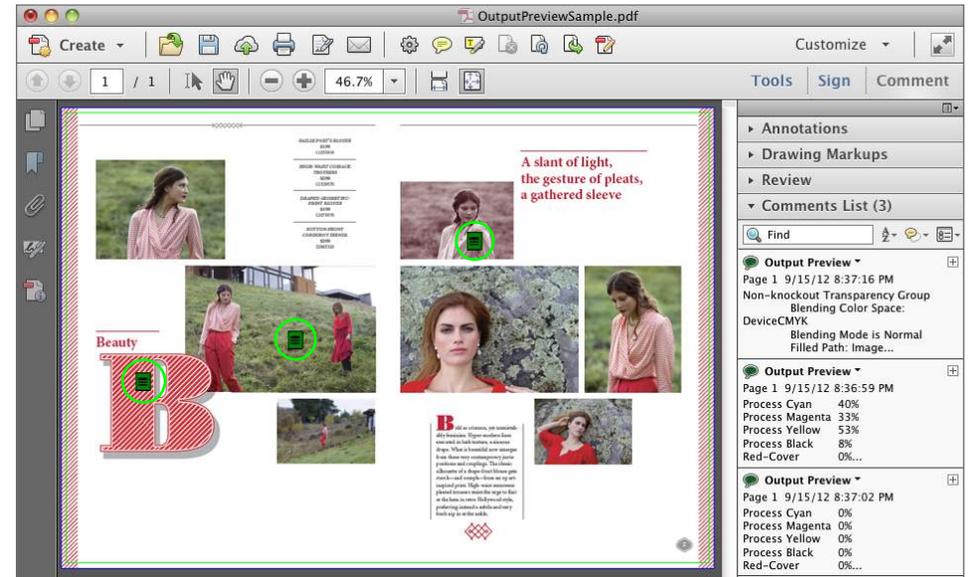


Output Preview now indicates whether a page contains any objects using overprint (even if the Color Warnings preview is not selected) or if transparency is used in the page. Art, Trim, and Bleed boxes can be highlighted easily, and the Set Page Boxes button provides a shortcut to the Crop dialog.

When Separations Preview is selected, shift-click on an area of the page to create an annotation on the page containing a list of the inks and their values at that location, as well as Total Area Coverage.

When Object Inspector is selected, shift-click on an area of the page to create annotation about the object at that position to create an

annotation containing all the information available through Object Inspector, including image dimensions, color space and resolution, overprint status, and more.



### Output Preview Annotations

When Separations Preview or Object Inspector is selected, shift-click anywhere on a page to add an annotation containing information about that point.

When Separations or Color Warnings options are chosen, the Show pulldown list now also includes:

- ICCBased CMYK
- ICCBased RGB
- DeviceN

## ADDITIONS TO COMMENTING TOOLS

Two new text annotation tools have been added. The Add Text Comment tool (T) creates text blocks. You can specify the font size and color, and control line spacing.



The Text Correction Markup tool (T with a star) applies Insert, Replace, and Strikethrough annotations. The individual Insert, Replace and Strikethrough tools are still available, but this tool can make text markups faster and easier by combining the features of three tools.

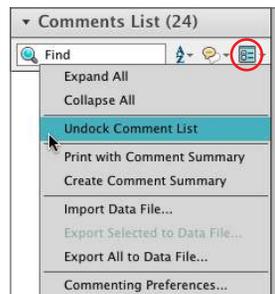


### New Text Annotations

*Add Text Comment: create freestanding text annotations.*

*Text Correction Markup: Acts as a combination of Insert, Replace, and Strikethrough.*

You can now undock the Comment list and position it anywhere on the screen. To return the list to the dock, choose Dock Comment List from the Options pulldown.

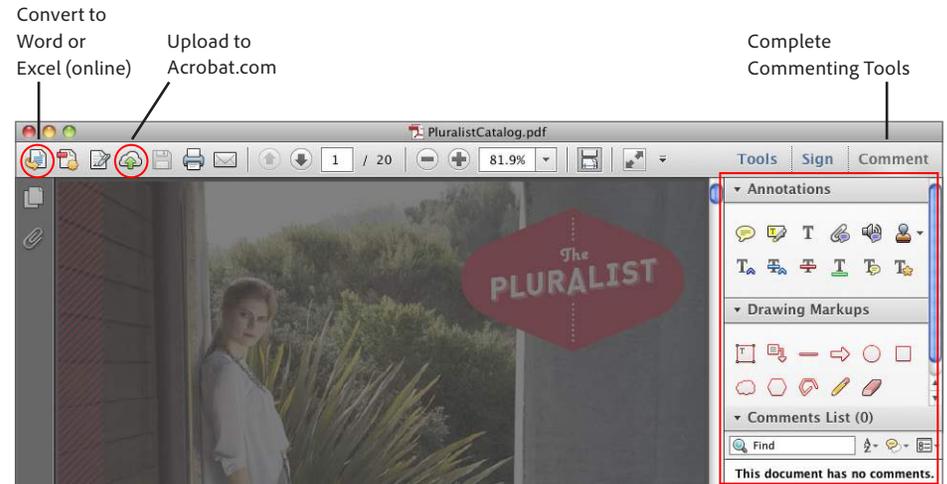


### Dockable Comment List

*From the Options pulldown menu in the Comments List panel, choose Undock Comment List to position the list anywhere on screen.*

## CHANGES TO ADOBE READER

Users of the free Adobe Reader can now add comments to PDFs, as well as import, export, and summarize comments.



This allows Reader users to participate in review processes without a user of Acrobat Pro saving the file as a Reader Extended PDF.

Reader users can also convert a PDF to Word or Excel through the online Adobe ExportPDF service (\$19.99/year), or upload files for storage on Acrobat.com.

Reader XI users can also save filled-out forms without losing entered data. It is no longer necessary for forms creators to enable PDFs, as long as recipients have Reader XI or newer. However, if you are unsure of your audience, to be certain that recipients of Reader 8 or later can save a filled-out form, choose File > Save As Other > Reader Extended PDF > Enable More Tools (includes form fill-in & save). In order to maintain the file's integrity, functions such as editing content or deleting and inserting pages are restricted in a Reader-enabled PDF, so work on a copy of the original file.

## FLASH PLAYER REQUIRED TO VIEW SWF AND PORTFOLIOS

Acrobat and Adobe Reader no longer include the Flash Player as in the past. Consequently, to display any Flash-based animation in a PDF, or to display the contents of a Portfolio (whose interface is powered by Flash), users will need to install the appropriate Flash Player for their system. If you attempt to play such content and the Flash Player is not currently installed, you will be prompted to download and install the player. To install the player, go here:

- Windows: [www.adobe.com/go/acrobat\\_flashdownload\\_info\\_win](http://www.adobe.com/go/acrobat_flashdownload_info_win)
- Macintosh: [www.adobe.com/go/acrobat\\_flashdownload\\_info\\_mac](http://www.adobe.com/go/acrobat_flashdownload_info_mac)

## LINKS TO KNOWN ISSUES AND RESOURCES

KnowledgeBase: <http://www.adobe.com/support/acrobat/>

Print Resources: <http://www.adobe.com/print/>

Adobe PDF Print Engine: <http://www.adobe.com/products/pdfprintengine/>

Partner Program for Print Professionals:

<http://www.adobe.com/go/printserviceprovider>. Find out about the wide range of benefits, including technical support, software, and promotional assistance Adobe has to offer print and pre-press professionals.